

AL-BAHER

CONNECT

Second Term

الصف الخامس الابتدائي



Parents' Guide

5th
Primary
2024



Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Contents

Theme (3) My society

Unit (7) Homes in Egypt (4)

Unit (8) At the doctor's (43)

Unit (9) My favorite animal (80)

Review (3) (112)

Theme (4) Being responsible

Unit (10) Let's visit Egypt (115)

Unit (11) Vacations (148)

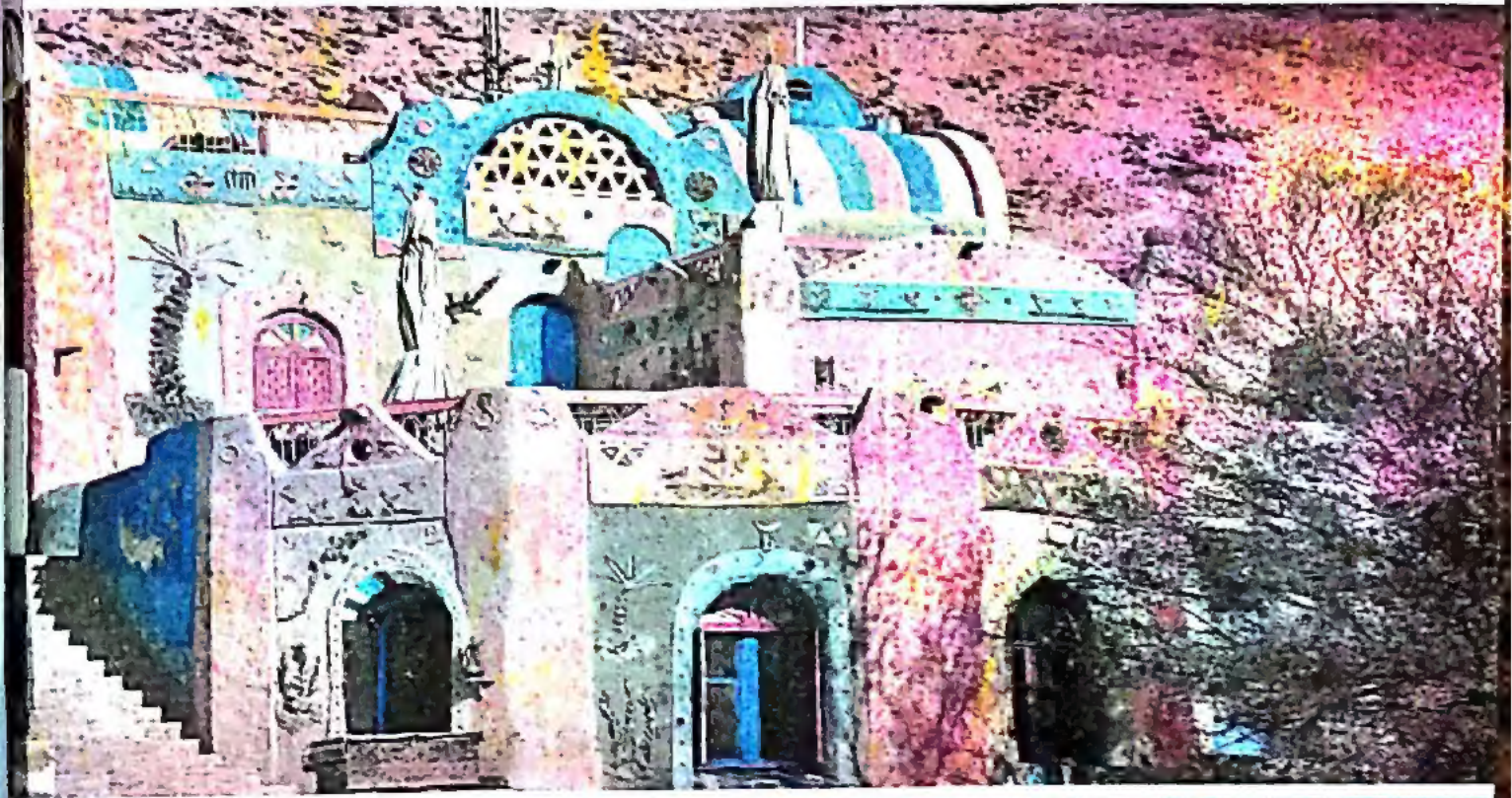
Unit (12) Fiction reader:
(183)

A Fantastic Family Adventure

Review (4) (203)

Listening Texts (205)

Theme (3) My society



Unit 7

Homes in Egypt

المنازل في مصر

In this unit students will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.
- talk about the home and furniture.
- read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.
- understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.
- learn how to say double vowels.
- write a simple blog about an unusual home.
- research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.

Lesson (1)

THE HOME

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



closet

خزانة ملابس



cushion

وسادة



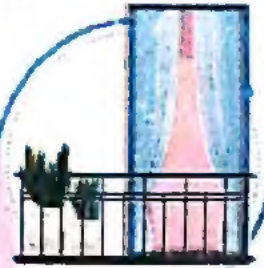
oven

فرن



elevator

مصعد (أسانسير)



balcony

شرفة (بلكونة)



shower

دش



television

تلفاز



armchair

كرسي بذراعين

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

5

Unit (7)



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

house	منزل	apartment	شقة	living room	حجرة معيشة
bedroom	حجرة نوم	bathroom	حمام	kitchen	مطبخ
parents	الوالدين	space	فضاء - فراغ	closer	أقرب
traditional	تقليدي	modern	حديث - عصري	old	قديم
big	كبير الحجم	easier	أسهل	fantastic	رائع
small	صغير الحجم	view	منظر طبيعي	mind map	خريطة ذهنية



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
live	يعيش lived	move	ينتقل moved
cook	يطهو cooked	share	يشارك shared
prefer	يفضل preferred	like	يحب liked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
come	يأتي	came		see	يرى	saw	
get	يحصل على	got		say	يقول	said	



Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

welcome to	مرحبًا بكم في	Come in!	تفضل بالدخول!
part of	جزء من	move to	ينتقل إلى
cook in	يطهو في	a gift from	هدية من
What about....?	ماذا عن....؟	live in	يعيش في
share....with	يشارك.... مع	What a great view!	يا له من منظر رائع!



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Fareeda : Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

أهلاً ديناء مرحباً بك في شقتي الجديدة! تفضلي بالدخول!

Dina : Thanks! Do you like living here?

شكراً! هل تحبين العيش هنا؟

Fareeda : I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

أنا أحبها! إنها شقة رائعة! أحب هذا الجزء من المدينة وهي أكبر بكثير من شقتنا القديمة.

Dina : How long did you live in your old apartment?

كم المدة التي عشتها في شقتك القديمة؟

Fareeda : Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

اثنتا عشرة سنة، منذ مولدي. ثم اضطر والدي إلى الانتقال إلى وظيفة جديدة، لذلك انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.

Dina : So, what's better about this new apartment?

إذن، ما هو الأفضل في هذه الشقة الجديدة؟

Fareeda : Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

تعال وشاهدي. المطبخ الجديد أكبر والفرن أكثر حداثة. تقول أمي إنه أسهل بكثير أن تطبخي فيه.

Dina : Very nice. And this is the living room? **Fareeda** : هذه هي غرفة المعيشة؟

Fareeda : Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.

نعم! كما ترون، هناك مساحة أكبر حتى نتمكن من امتلاك تلفاز أكبر. انظري إلى هذه الوسائد التقليدية. كانوا هدية من الجدة.

Dina : Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms? **Fareeda** : أوه، نعم! وماذا عن غرف النوم؟

Fareeda : We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.

لدينا ثلاث غرف نوم الآن. أنا أشارك غرفة مع أختي أميرة لكن غرفة نومنا كبيرة جداً. ولدينا حمامين.

Dina : It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view!

إنها جميلة! الشرفة رائعة أيضاً - يا له من منظر رائع!

Help your child listen and read the dialog.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ المحادثة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

7



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 My had to move to a new job.
a) uncle b) brother c) parents d) grandpa
- 2 We moved to a apartment.
a) closer b) farther c) far d) tiny
- 3 The new kitchen is
a) smaller b) longer c) shorter d) bigger
- 4 We have three now.
a) bedrooms b) livingrooms c) bathrooms d) kitchens

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Dina lives in a/an
a) lake b) apartment c) balcony d) sea
- 2 We sleep in the
a) bathroom b) livingroom c) bedroom d) kitchen
- 3 There is a/an in the bathroom.
a) shower b) armchair c) bed d) oven
- 4 Welcome my new apartment!
a) in b) to c) with d) for
- 5 There is a/an in the kitchen.
a) oven b) armchair c) bed d) shower

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

old - love - oven - closer - bedroom

Welcome to my new apartment. I 1) it. It's much bigger than the 2) one. My parents had to move to a new job. So we moved to a 3) apartment. The new kitchen is bigger and the 4) is more modern.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1 in - I - an apartment - live - .

2 is - Why - happy - Fareeda - ?

3 about - bedrooms - What - the - ?

4 fantastic - balcony - The - is - .

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

what a great view

6 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

My new apartment

Guiding words:

(new apartment - bigger - balcony - fantastic)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2 / A)

MY PERFECT ROOM



Main Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

on the right

على اليمين

on the wall

على الحائط

on the left

على اليسار

in the middle of....

في منتصف

next to

بجوار

dangerous

خطير



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

poster

ملصق

perfect

مثالي / نموذجي

chair

كرسي

street

شارع

video games

ألعاب فيديو

alone

بمفرده



Conjugation of verbs

نصرف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
miss	يفتقد - يفوت	missed	die	يموت	died
smile	يبتسم	smiled	sit	يجلس	sat
try	يحاول	tried	eat	يأكل	ate



Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

perfect bedroom

حجرة نوم مثالية

sit in a chair

يجلس على كرسي

make friends

يكون صداقات

go down the street

يأخذ الشارع

Read about the bedroom.



I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

أنا أحب غرفتي بومي. أشارك مع أختي. على اليمين يوجد سريري وبجانبه مكتبي على اليسار يوجد سرير أختي. في منتصف الغرفة يوجد كرسي بذراعين مع وسادتين وخزانة كبيرة. وعلى الحائط هناك الكثير من ملصقات الحيوانات.

* Draw your perfect bedroom.

Help your child identify these prepositions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على حروف الجر (المكان).

Prefix

A prefix is a set of letters, which we add before the main word to make a new word.

البادئة: هي مجموعة من الأحرف التي نضيفها قبل الكلمة الرئيسية لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

Un-

— — — means 'not'.

البادئة (un-) تفيد عكس الكلمة

We add "un-" at the beginning of a word to get the opposite meaning.

نضع البادئة "un-" في بداية الكلمة لإعطاء عكس المعنى.

friendly	ودود	→	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	→	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	→	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	→	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	→	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	→	unfair	غير عادل - ظالم



Study the following

Word	الكلمة	Meaning	معناها
unfriendly		not kind to someone	
unsafe		dangerous	
unhappy		sad	
uncomfortable		something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body	
unlucky		something bad happens to you without a reason	
unfair		something that happens that isn't morally right or fair	



Activities

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 the right of my bedroom, there is my bed.
a) In b) At c) On d) To
- 2 In the of the room, there is an armchair.
a) right b) left c) straight d) middle
- 3 the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.
a) On b) So c) For d) To
- 4 His cat died last week. He was very
a) unhappy b) lucky c) unsafe d) unfair
- 5 I never sit in that green armchair. It's very
a) uncomfortable b) unlucky c) unfair d) safe
- 6 Don't go down the street in the dark alone. It's very
a) unsafe b) fair c) unfair d) unkind
- 7 He's very because he missed the bus.
a) unfriendly b) unlucky c) unfair d) unsafe
- 8 She's very She never smiles or tries to make friends.
a) unfriendly b) unfair c) happy d) unsafe

2 Read and match.

اقرأ وامل.

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 1 unfriendly | a) something bad happens to you without a reason |
| 2 unhappy | b) dangerous |
| 3 unlucky | c) sad |
| 4 unsafe | d) not kind to someone |
| 5 unfair | e) something that happens that isn't morally right or fair |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- () 5- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

13



Lesson (2 / B)

- Howler monkeys in the jungle - Language Focus



Main Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

scientist	عالم	research	بحث	family groups	مجموعات عائلية
younger	أصغر سناً	frightened	خائف	local villagers	القرويين المحليين
path	طريق	howler monkey			القرود العواء (قرود أمريكية)



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

friendly	ودود	South America	أمريكا الجنوبية	uncle	عم / خال
airplane	طائرة	everywhere		work	عمل
suddenly	فجأة	indeed		sculpture	تمثال
case	حقيبة	frightening	مفزع / مخيف / مرعب	jungle	غابة
deep	عميق	garbage	مخلفات / قمامة		



Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

set out	انطلق	go back	يعود
nearby	بالقرب من	go forward	تقدم للأمام
look for	يبحث عن	interested in	مهتم بـ
carry ... away down to	يحمل .. بعيداً إلى	all over Egypt	في كل أنحاء مصر
come toward	بأني باتجاه	heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something frightening happened to him and he was lucky he lived to tell me about it!



Howler monkeys in the jungle

عمي عالم ويحب الحيوانات. عندما كان أصغر سنًا، سافر كثيرًا في أمريكا الجنوبية للعمل. لقد أحب المكان هناك لأن الناس كانوا ودودين للغاية وساعدوه في عمله. ثم منذ حوالي ثلاث سنوات، حدث له شيء مخيف وكان محظوظًا أن يعيش ليخبرني بذلك.

He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A local villager told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be unsafe."

كان مهتمًا جدًا بالقرود المواء وأراد أن يجري بعض الأبحاث في مجموعات عائلاتهم. وأخبره أحد القرويين بمكان وجود عائلة قرد المواء في مكان قريب وكان سعيدًا جدًا. لكن القروي قال أيضًا: "غدا سنهطل أمطار غزيرة لذا قد يكون الوضع غير آمن".

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very close to them. Then the rain started. It was very heavy rain.

تطابق عمي للبحث عن عائلة قرد المواء وسرعان ما كان في أعماق الغابة واستطاع أن يسمع القروود ونظر لأعلى. وكان يعلم أنه كان قريبًا جدًا منهم. ثم بدأ المطر. كانت أمطارًا غزيرة جدًا.

Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down to the river. He was very frightened.

وسرعان ما كان هناك ماء في كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق للسير قدمًا أو للخلف. وفجأة، جاء الكثير من الماء نحوه وحمله بعيدًا إلى النهر. كان خائفًا جدًا.

Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy indeed!

وفجأة رأى يداً وكان شخصاً يصرخ. لقد كان القروي. أخذ بيد العم وقال، "الآن أنت بأمان!" كان عمي بالفعل سعيدًا للغاية!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويلعب.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5) 15

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

1- To talk about something that happened once

١- للتعبير عن شيء حدث ذات مرة فيما مضى.

e.g. I **visited** her house when I **was** five.

2- To talk about something that happened several times in the past

٢- للتعبير عن شيء حدث عدة مرات في الماضي.

e.g. We **went** to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

3- To talk about something that was true for some time in the past

٣- للتعبير عن شيء ما كان حقيقياً لوقت ما في الماضي.

e.g. He **loved** living in his grandmother's apartment **as a child**.

4- Expressions with **ago**.

٤- التعبيرات مع (ago).

e.g. I **met** her in Zagazig **two years ago**.

Form التكوين

The second form of the verb

التصريف الثاني للفعل

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

يُضاف للفعل المنتظم (d, ed, ied).

use → used { play → played { try → tried

- We add **(d)** when the verb ends in **(e)**.

نضيف (d) عندما ينتهي الفعل بـ (e).

live → lived { die → died { create → created

- We add **(ed)** to the other regular verbs.

نضيف (ed) للنهاية الأفعال المنتظمة الأخرى.

travel → traveled } want → wanted } help → helped

- We change **(-y)** to **(-i)** and add **(-ed)** when the verb ends in a consonant + **(y)**

نحول الـ (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (ed) للفعل المنتهي بـ (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن.

try → tried } carry → carried } study → studied

Irregular verbs

الأفعال الغير منتظمة

come → came } eat → ate } see → saw

Study these verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
visit يزور	visited	happen يحدث	happened
love يحب	loved	help يساعد	helped
carry يحمل	carried	travel يسافر	traveled
look up ينظر لأعلى	looked up	start يبدأ	started
create يبتكر	created	rain تمطر	rained

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
go يذهب	went	meet يقابل	met
am / is يكون	was	tell يخبر	told
are يكونوا	were	say يقول	said
take يأخذ	took	set out يبدأ رحلة	set out

Help your child identify the past simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن الماضي البسيط.

Negative النفى

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. The people **didn't help** him with his work.

Questions

(Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر)?

e.g. **Did** you **visit** Ali yesterday? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q.W. + **did** + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر)?

e.g. **When** did you **meet** Heba?
- I **met** her two days ago.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	last	الماضي
ago	منذ	in the past	في الماضي
in 2020	في عام ٢٠٢٠	Once	ذات مرة

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I her house when I was five.
a) visit b) visited c) visits d) visiting
- She her friend two days ago.
a) met b) meet c) meets d) meeting
- He to South America last week.
a) travel b) travelling c) traveled d) travels

- 4 The local people didn't him with his work.
a) help b) helps c) helped d) helping
- 5 He didn't Om Ali in Tanta.
a) eat b) ate c) eats d) eating
- 6 He came here two days
a) every b) yesterday c) now d) ago
- 7 I her when I was five.
a) visit b) visited c) visits d) visiting
- 8 Yesterday, my cousin to visit us.
a) come b) came c) comes d) coming
- 9 His grandma went to Aswan
a) now b) tomorrow c) today d) last year
- 10 It rain yesterday.
a) doesn't b) didn't c) don't d) isn't
- 11 She a fantastic sculpture last summer.
a) create b) created c) creates d) creating

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 Yesterday, my cousin (come) to visit us.
- 2 He didn't (traveled) all over Egypt.
- 3 Did it (rained) yesterday?
- 4 His grandma (go) to Aswan last year.
- 5 I visited her house when I (be) five.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

ستمع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 I love my
a) bathroom b) bedroom c) kitchen d) oven
- 2 I share my bedroom with my
a) parents b) grandpa c) brother d) sister
- 3 On the side, there is my bed with a desk next to it
a) left b) corner c) right d) middle
- 4 In the middle of the room, there is a/an
a) bed b) sofa c) closet d) armchair

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

ااختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 That's very..... You ate everything and didn't leave any for us
a) dangerous b) sad c) fair d) unfair
- 2 He's very because he missed the bus
a) unlucky b) unfriendly c) unfair d) fair
- 3 She's very..... She never smiles or tries to make friends
a) unfriendly b) happy c) unfair d) unlucky
- 4, my cousin came to visit us
a) Now b) Yesterday c) Tomorrow d) Ago
- 5 "....." means dangerous
a) Unlucky b) Unsafe c) Unkind d) Unhappy
- 6 I didn't to school yesterday
a) go b) goes c) went d) going

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

bed - love - share - armchair - left

I love my bedroom. I 1) it with my sister. On the right, there is my 2) with a desk next to it. On the 3), there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an 4) with two cushions.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 People in South America were
a) dangerous b) sad c) friendly d) safe
- 2 My uncle loves
a) books b) animals c) plants d) sports

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What does your uncle do?
- 4 Where did your uncle travel when he was younger?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 I (visit) her house when I was five.
- 2 She (meet) her friend two days ago.
- 3 Toka didn't (ate) Om Ali in Tanata.
- 4 He came here two days (now).
- 5 It (rain) yesterday.
- 6 (In) the right, there's my bed.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3 / A)

ANCIENT EGYPTIAN HOMES

Listen, point and say.

استمع، أشر وقل.



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Ancient Egypt

مصر القديمة

drinking

الشرب

cool

معتدل البرودة

cooking

الطهي

furniture

أثاث

washing

الغسل

the countryside

الريف

papyrus

القصب

special style

أسلوب مميز

poem

قصيدة

crops

محاصيل

mud

طين - طمي

wind

رياح

wall

جدار



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
use يستخدم	used	want يريد	wanted
paint يلون - يلون	painted	relax يسترخي	relaxed
save يوفر - يحفظ	saved	cover يغطي	covered
store يخزن	stored		

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
make يصنع	made	keep يحفظ - يري	kept
sleep ينام	slept	build يبني	built
grow يزرع	grew	have - has يمتلك	had



Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وأحرف جر هامة

used for يستخدم لـ	flat roofs أسطح مستوية
different from يختلف عن	wooden boxes صناديق خشبية
at night ليلاً	join together تتصل ببعضها
by the banks of the Nile بالقرب من ضفاف النيل	the same as نفس الشيء مثل

Did you know?

In Ancient Egypt, mud bricks kept the inside of the house cool in hot weather. Small windows and vents on the roof let air into the house.

في مصر القديمة، كان الطوب اللبن يحافظ على برودة المنزل من الداخل في الطقس الحار. تسمح النوافذ الصغيرة وفتحات التهوية الموجودة على السطح بدخول الهواء إلى المنزل.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5) 23

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used **mud** from the river to make bricks for their houses. The **mud bricks** made very strong walls.

في مصر القديمة، بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل. واستخدموا مياهه للشرب والطبخ والفسيل. كما استخدموا طين النهر لصنع الطوب لمنازلهم. الطوب اللين صنع جدراناً قوية جداً.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat **roofs**, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم، وساعد الطوب اللين في القيام بذلك. قام بعض الناس أيضاً بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة. كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة ذات أسطح مستوية، والتي كانت أبرد جزء في المنزل. وكانت العائلات غالباً ما تقوم بالطهي والأكل والاسترخاء والنوم هناك في الليالي الحارة.

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were **reed mats** to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large **pots** and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

كان الأثاث في المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلف تماماً عن اليوم. كانت هناك حصائر من البوص للجلوس والتوم عليها. واستخدموا ورق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب. وكان هذا يئبى الحشرات في الخارج. وفي كل منزل، كان هناك أواني وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس. لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسرة أو كرسي.

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

في المدن، كان الناس يعيشون بالقرب جداً من بعضهم البعض ولذلك بنوا منازلهم أطول، من طابقين. وهذا وفر مساحة حتى يتمكنوا من بناء المزيد من المنازل. كانت منازل المدينة متصلة ببعضها، تماماً كما هو الحال اليوم. في الريف كانت المنازل عادة مكونة من طابق واحد وكانت تحتوي على حديقة، وكانوا يزرعون الخضار، ويربون الدجاج فيها.

Listen and read the poem.

استمع واقرأ القصيدة.

By the banks of the ancient River Nile,

بجوار ضفاف نهر النيل القديم،

Egyptian houses had a special style

كانت منازل المصريين لها طراز خاص

Dark inside with small windows,

مظلمة من الداخل وبها نوافذ صغيرة،

Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows,

حصائر من البوص على السطح حيث تهب الرياح الباردة،

Outside under the stars at night,

في الخارج تحت النجوم بالليل،

One family together, feeling all right.

أسرة واحدة معاً، تشعر بأنها بخير.

Mud from the Nile made their walls

الطين من النيل جعل جدرانهم.

Safe and strong, and never to fall.

آمنة وقوية، ولا تسقط أبداً.

What makes Ancient Egyptian homes special.

The mud bricks made the Egyptian homes strong and cool.



Yes. And the flat roofs were nice, too. People slept there on hot nights.



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع و يقرأ.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

25



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the
a) Nile b) sea c) ocean d) lake
- 2 They used for drinking, cooking, and washing.
a) juice b) milk c) water d) oil
- 3 They also used ... from the river to make bricks for their houses.
a) grass b) water c) sand d) mud
- 4 The mud bricks made very strong
a) buses b) reeds c) walls d) gates

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 The mud bricks helped Ancient Egyptians to keep their homes
a) sunny b) cool c) warm d) hot
- 2 The Ancient Egyptians stored their clothes in boxes.
a) wooden b) sand c) glass d) plastic
- 3 A lot of Ancient Egyptians made their homes near the
a) lake b) Nile c) desert d) Red Sea
- 4 The Ancient Egyptians used mud to make their houses.
a) bricks b) reeds c) papyrus d) stones
- 5 The furniture in Ancient Egyptians homes was very different today.
a) from b) for c) on d) as

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

insects - strong - reed - papyrus - beds

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were 1) mats to sit and sleep on. They used 2) to cover the windows and doors. This kept the 3) outside. Not many people had 4) or chairs.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes
a) sunny b) warm c) hot d) cool
- 2 Some people also painted their homes
a) yellow b) black c) brown d) white

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What did Ancient Egyptian homes all have?
.....
- 4 What did the Ancient Egyptians use to make their homes cool?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

their- What - use to - people - did - build - homes - ?

there- They - chickens - kept - vegetables - grew - and - .

had- Egyptian houses - style - a special - .

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

the Ancient Egyptians stored their clothes in wooden boxes

7 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Ancient Egyptian Homes

Guiding words:

(made - Nile - mud bricks - cool - flat roofs - clothes -
wooden boxes - reed mats - sit)

Lesson (3 / B)

PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

long (e)

When there is a double "e" in a word, the sound is long.

عندما يكون هناك حرف (e) مزدوج (مكرر مرتين) في كلمة، فإن صوت الحرف يكون طويل.

(ee) /i:/



long (o)

When there is a double "o" in a word, the sound is long.

عندما يكون هناك حرف (o) مزدوج (مكرر مرتين) في كلمة، فإن صوت الحرف يكون طويل.

(oo) /u:/



Help your child learn how to pronounce double vowels.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم نطق حروفين متحركين متتاليين.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

29

short (o)

We can also pronounce "oo" as a shorter sound.

(oo) /ʊ/

ننطق أيضًا (oo) كصوت قصير.



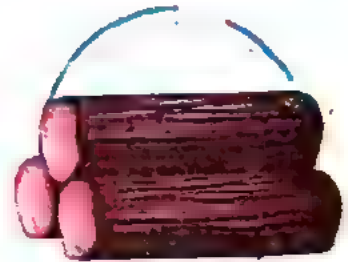
book

كتاب



cook

يطهو



wood

خشب



wool

صوف



good

جيد

(oo) /ʌ/



flood

فيضان



blood

دم

Put the words in the correct column in the table.

ضع الكلمات في العمود المناسب للجدول.

(school - book - flood - tree - three - wood - cook - food - zoo
- spoon - pool - sheep - queen - blood)

/u:/

/ʊ/

/ʌ/

/i:/

Lessons (4 & 5)

- WRITING - PROJECT



Vocabulary

المفردات

blogging	التدوين	ecological	بيئي	fit	يناسب
architect	مهندس معماري	pot	إتاء	gate	بوابة
the Netherlands	هولندا	landscape	منظر طبيعي	heat	يسخن
fields	حقول	farmhouse	مزرعة ريفي	light	ضوء
different	مختلف	unusual	غير عادي	top	قمة
topic	موضوع	The Upside down house			البيت المقلوب



Adjectives

الصفات

Positive adjectives

صفات إيجابية

funny	مضحك - قرح	cool	رائع - ممتاز البرودة
awesome	مدهش - ملهل	friendly	ودود
brilliant	رائع - مثاق	interesting	شيق

Negative adjectives

صفات سلبية

annoying	مزعج	boring	ملل
awful	لظن		

Note:

Blogging: to write about something in an online blog.

التدوين: أن تكتب عن شيء ما في مدونة عبر الإنترنت.

Ecological: related to living things and their environments.

بيئية: مرتبط بالكائنات الحية وبيئاتها.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

31



Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Dalida

BLOG HOME

ABOUT ME

LINKS

ARCHIVE

Wednesday, 5 November

Unusual homes

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like **blogging** about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic



is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect, so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. It's really awesome!

أهلاً اسمي داليا وأنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة. أكتب هذا الأسبوع عن مثير غير عادية. هذا الموضوع شيق جداً. أشتتة لي أن أمي مهندسة معمارية، لذا فهي تأخذني أحياناً لرؤية بعض الأماكن الرائعة. إنه أمر رائع جداً.

I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online - it's upside down! It is actually an old **farmhouse** which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local **landscape**, which is farms and fields. It is also very **ecological** because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool!

لقد وجدت هذا المنزل الغريب في هولندا عبر الإنترنت. إنه مقلوب! إنه في الواقع من قديم ويغيره الناس لخدمة حديثاً. وفيه يسكن حديقاً. كل النوافذ في الأعلى، وبالتالي تحصل على الكثير من الضوء. بهذه السكان المحليون لأنه يتلاءم جداً مع المناظر الطبيعية المحيطة وهي المزارع والحقول. وهو أيضاً صديق للبيئة لأنهم يستخدمون الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل. هذا رائع جداً.

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

ما رأيك فيه؟ هل يعجبك؟



Upside down house in the Netherlands

Tip!

Steps for writing a blog

خطوات كتابة مدونة

- 1- Write about something you like and enjoy. كُتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به
- 2- Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use Contractions (I'm, It's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".
كُتب لقراءتك وكنت تتحدث إليهم. واستخدم الاختصارات (I'm, It's) وكلمات مثل منهض وجميل.
- 3- Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis 🤔 🤔 🤔 🤔.
استخدم علامات التعجب ورموز المشاعر 🤔 🤔 🤔 🤔.
- 4- Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.
عبر عن رأيك واغلب من القراء التعبير عن آرائهم
- 5- Check that your spelling is correct. تأكد أن الهجاء صحيح

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Ali

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

Sunday, 15th March

Unusual homes

Hi! My name's Ali. I like going online and blogging about unusual things.

Last week, I found an unusual house.

It was in Ancient Egypt. It was awesome!

The Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to keep their house cool. The mud bricks made very strong walls. It's really cool. What do you think of it? Do you like it?





Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 The upside down house is in the
a) Egypt b) China c) Netherlands d) France
- 2 It is actually an farm house.
a) big b) old c) modern d) new
- 3 All the windows are at the
a) top b) bottom c) middle d) down
- 4 It's also very
a) harmful b) bad c) modern d) ecological

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

upside down - unusual - interesting - blogging - architect

Aya likes blogging about different things. This week she's writing about 1) homes. This topic is very 2) for her because her mom's an 3) She found unusual house in the Netherlands online. It's 4)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online. It's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water and sun to heat and make energy for the house.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The house is in the
a) Netherlands b) Egypt c) France d) China
- 2 The house is upside
a) up b) on c) at d) down

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Why is that house very ecological?
.....
- 4 Where are the windows?
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

- 1 writing - about - I'm - homes - unusual -
.....
- 2 you - Do - the house - like - ?
.....
- 3 's - home - Where - the - ?
.....

5 Write a paragraph of about (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

The upside down house

Guiding words:

(unusual - in the Netherlands - upside down - windows - top)

Review on Unit (7)

لغويات

Vocabulary

elevator	مصعد (أسانسير)	closet	خزانة ملابس
cushion	وسادة	oven	فرن
balcony	شرفة (بلكونة)	armchair	كرسي بذراعين
television	تلفاز	shower	دش
sleeping area	منطقة النوم	roof	سطح
reed mat	حصيرة	gate	بوابة
pot	إناء	blogging	التدوين
ecological	بيئي	Upside down house	المنازل المقلوب

Adjectives

unfriendly	غير ودود	uncomfortable	غير مريح	unlucky	غير محظوظ
unsafe	غير آمن	unhappy	حزين	unfair	غير عادل
annoying	مزعج	awesome	مدهش - مذهل	awful	لظيع
friendly	ودود	funny	مضحك - مفرح	interesting	شيق
boring	ممل	brilliant	لامع - متألّق	cool	وقع - معتدل البرودة

Phonics

long (oo) /u:/		short (oo) /ʊ/		long (ee) /i:/	
school	مدرسة	book	كتاب	sheep	خروف
roof	سطح	cook	يطهو	seed	بذرة
food	طعم	wood	خشب	queen	ملكة
noon	الظهيرة	wool	صوف	tree	شجرة
spoon	ملعقة	good	جيد	cheese	جبن

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

الاستخدام

sage

1- للتعبير عن شيء حدثت له مرة في الماضي.

2- للتعبير عن شيء حدث عدة مرات في الماضي.

3- للتعبير عن شيء ما كان حقيقياً لوقت ما في الماضي.

4- التعبيرات مع ago.

Form

التكوين

the second form of the verb.

e.g. I helped my sister yesterday.

Negative

النفى

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. The people didn't help him with his work.

Questions

Yes / No question

السؤال بـ (هل)

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ?

e.g. Did you visit Ali yesterday? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question

السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q.W. + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ?

e.g. When did you meet Heba?

- I met her two days ago.

Keywords

الكلمات الدالة

yesterday

أمس

last

الماضي

in 2020

في عام ٢٠٢٠

ago

فيما مضى - منذ

in the past

في الماضي

Once

ذات مرة

Help your child revise unit (7).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السابعة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5) 37

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of about (30) words. كُتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

My new apartment

We moved to a new apartment. It is bigger than the old one. The kitchen is big and there is an oven in it. The living room has a balcony. It's really fantastic. There are three bedrooms. I share a bedroom with my sister. I like our new apartment.

Your perfect room

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

Ancient Egyptian homes

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used mud bricks to make very strong walls. The mud bricks kept their houses cool. The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sleep or sit on.

Unusual homes

I like blogging about unusual homes. I found an unusual house in the Netherlands online. It's upside down! All the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house.

Dictation on Unit (7)

Lesson (7.1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	خزانة ملابس		تليفزيون
	وسادة		دُش
	فرن		مصعد
	كرسي يدراعين		بلكونه

Lesson (7.2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	على اليمين		على اليسار
	على الحائط		في المنتصف
	بجوار		مثالي

Lesson (7.3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	ورق البردي		إتاء
	منطقة التوم		حصيرة
	طوب لين		بوابة
	سطح		الريف
	شجرة		ناعم
	خروف		دم
	بلور		فيضان
	ملكة		ظهيرة
	يصنع		يظهو
	صوف		خشب

Lesson (7.4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	مهندس معماري		مقلوب
	مزرعة		مناظر طبيعية

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (7)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 I like about different things.
a) sleeping b) playing c) blogging d) traveling
- 2 This week I'm writing about homes.
a) unusual b) usual c) unlucky d) unfair
- 3 This topic is very for me.
a) bad b) awful c) boring d) interesting
- 4 My mom's a/an
a) teacher b) architect c) vet d) doctor

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 In Ancient Egypt houses were made from bricks.
a) wood b) straw c) mud d) reed
- 2 There are two in our bedroom.
a) schools b) beds c) kitchens d) ovens
- 3 His cat died last week. He was very
a) unhappy b) unfair c) unsafe d) unfriendly
- 4 There is a modern in the kitchen.
a) bed b) sofa c) oven d) shower

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

bigger - friendly - traveled - loved - animals

My uncle is a scientist. He loves 1) When he was younger, he 2) a lot in South America for work. He 3) it there because the people were very 4) and helped him with his work.



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The opposite of the word "taller" is
a) fatter b) bigger... c) longer d) shorter
- 2 There were reed mats to and sleep on.
a) sit b) drink... c) build d) make

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 How were the countryside houses?
- 4 How many floors did people build their houses in cities?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- 1 does - What - home - like - the - look - ?
- 2 uncomfortable - This - very - is - armchair - a - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 We (go) to my aunt's house last Friday.
- 2 He didn't (traveled) all over Egypt.

7 Punctuate the following.

where did Ancient Egyptians build their houses

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Ancient Egyptian Homes

Guiding questions:

- Where is the home? In the city or the country?
- What does the home look like from outside?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I love my
a) kitchen b) bedroom c) living room d) bathroom
- I share it with with my
a) father b) brother c) uncle d) sister
- On the , there is my sister's bed
a) left b) right c) middle d) wall

Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- In ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the
a) lake b) ocean c) Nile d) oasis
- They used the water of the Nile for , cooking and washing
a) sweeping b) sleeping c) drinking d) eating
- They used from the river to make bricks for their houses
a) water b) bricks c) mud d) stone

2 Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

long - born - apartment - bigger

- Fareeda : Hi Dina, welcome to my new 1)
Dina : Thanks! Do you like living here?
Fareeda : Yes, I love it. It's much 2) than our old one.
Dina : How 3) did you live in your old apartment?
Fareeda : Twelve years, since I was 4)

Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

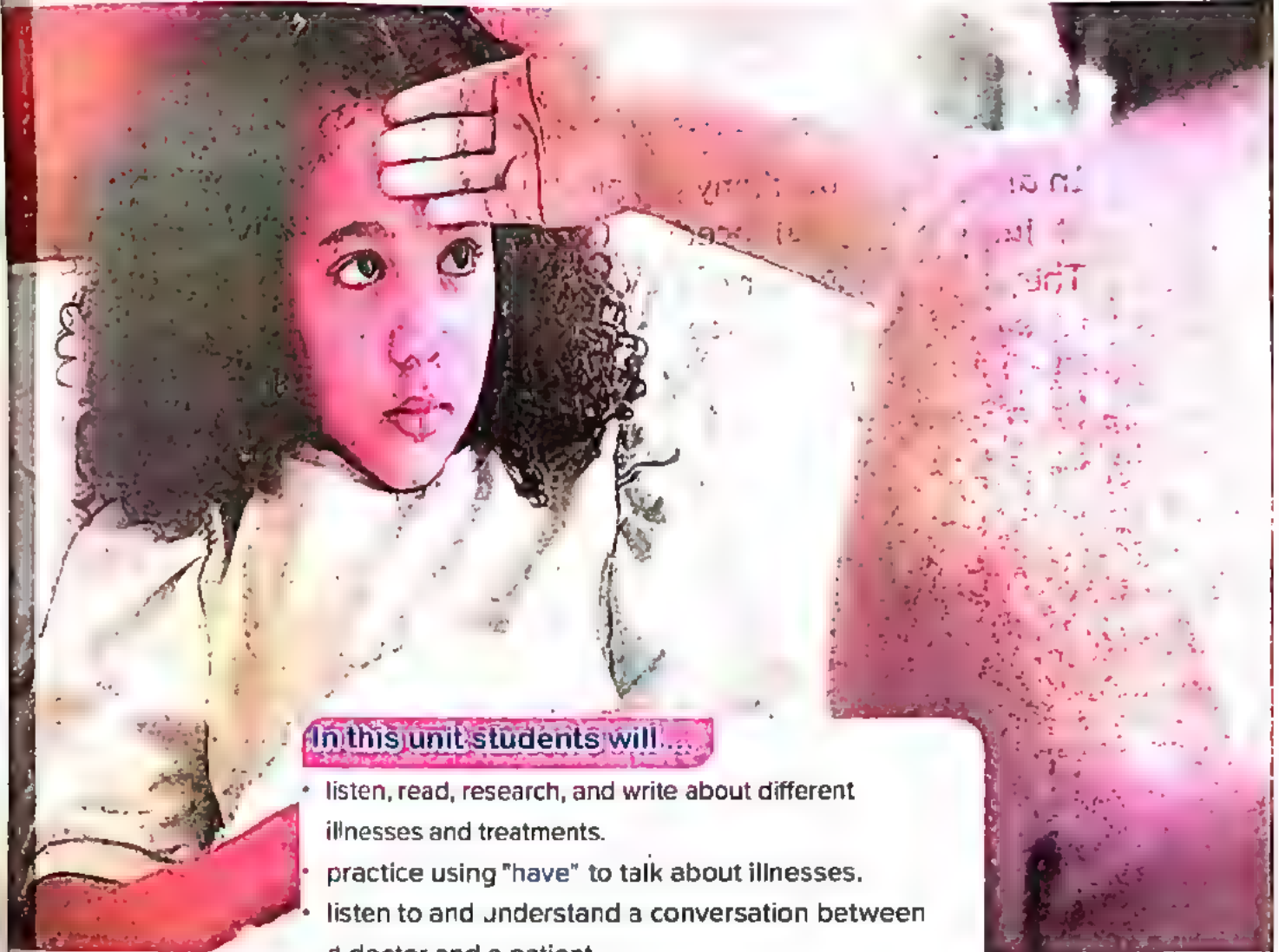
animals - fine - scientist - job

- Ali : Hi, Toka. How are you?
Toka : I'm 1) , thank you.
Ali : What's your uncle's 2) ?
Toka : He's a 3)
Ali : What does he love?
Toka : He loves 4)

Unit 8

At the doctor's

في عيادة الطبيب



In this unit students will...

- listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.
- practice using "have" to talk about illnesses.
- listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.
- learn about and use the prefixes un-, in-, and im-.
- understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds.
- write a short paragraph about staying healthy.
- plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.

Lesson

(1)

THEY DIDN'T COME TO THE CLUB!



Main Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



earache

ألم في الأذن



toothache

ألم في الأسنان



backache

ألم في الظهر



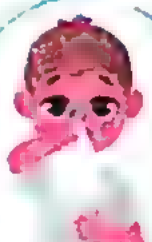
headache

صداع



sore throat

تهيج في الحلق



a cold

زكام / أنفحة برد



cough

كحة / سعال



stomachache

ألم في المعدة



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

ankle

كاحل القدم

honey

عسل

coach

مدرب

back

ظهر

dentist

طبيب أسنان

careful

حريص / حذر

shoulder

كعب

problem

مشكلة

leg

ساق

stomach

معدة

people

ناس

ear

أذن



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present

Past

Present

Past

hurt

ألم / يؤذي

hurt

come

يأتي

came

have / has

يملك / لديه

had

feel

يشعر

felt

44

Unit (8) - At the doctor's

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات



Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feel better

يشعر بتحسن

at football practice

في تدريب كرة القدم

worried about

قلق بشأن

ouch!

تعبير يعبّر عن الألم

I hope so

أتمنى ذلك

from swimming

من السباحة

Mom : Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?

مرحبًا يا فارس! هل قضيت يومًا جيدًا في النادي؟

Fares : Not really. Five people didn't come to the club today!

في الواقع لا فمه. لم يأت خمس أفراد لنادي اليوم!

Mom : Oh no! Are they OK?

لا بأس؟

أولئك الذين هم بخير؟

Fares : No, they have problems.

My friend Tarek hurt his ankle

at football practice last night.

And Amr has an earache from swimming.

لديهم مشكل. صدمني طرف أصبب في كاحله في تدريب كرة القدم الليلة الماضية. ويعاني عمرو من ألم في الأذن من السباحة



Mom : What about your cousin Lama?
Your aunt said she had a toothache.

ماذا عن ابنة عمك لاما؟ قالت عممتك إنها تعاني من ألم في الأسنان.



Fares : No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!

لا، لم تكن هناك. أعتقد أنها ذهبت إلى طبيب الأسنان. اثنين من أصدقائي معصابان بنزلة برد. أخبرنا المدرب أن نكون حذرين. عندما يصاب السعال والتهاب الحلق، ينبغي أن نبقى في المنزل!



Mom : How do you feel?

كيف تشعر؟

Fares : Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope I'll feel better tomorrow.

حسنًا، لدي ألم في الظهر وأنا قلق على أصدقائي. أتمنى أن أشعر بتحسن غدًا.



Mom : I hope so, too!

أتمنى ذلك أيضًا.

Help your child listen and read the dialog.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع في الحوار ويقرأ.

Listen and learn.

استمع واقرأ.

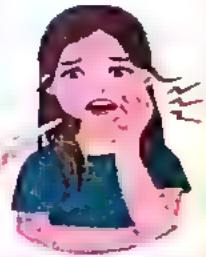


What's the matter, Dina? Do you have a toothache?

ما الأمر يا دينا؟ هل عندك ألم في الأسنان؟

Yes. My tooth hurts!

نعم، سنني يؤلمني



Mom, can I have some milk and honey for my cough, please?

هل يمكن أن أتناول بعض اللبن والعسل لأجل السعال يا أمي، من فضلك.

Ouch!! My shoulder hurts!

أوه! كتفي يؤلمني



What's the matter, Wael? Does your stomach hurt?

ما الأمر يا وائل؟ هل معدتك تؤلمك؟

No, I have a headache.

لا، عندي صداع.



Do you have a sore throat?

هل عندك التهاب في الحلق؟

Yes, I do! It really hurts, and I can't talk.

نعم، إنه حقاً مؤلم ولا أستطيع التحدث.





Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Only people came to the club today.
a) six b) eight c) four d) five
- 2 My friend Tarek hurt his
a) eye b) ankle c) ear d) head
- 3 Amr had a/an
a) earache b) toothache c) headache d) stomachache
- 4 Lama went to the because she had a toothache.
a) vet b) doctor c) dentist d) engineer

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 My friend is at the
a) doctor b) doctors c) doctor's d) vet
- 2 Only five people to the club today!
a) came b) wanted c) ate d) saw
- 3 His ear hurts. He has a/an
a) toothache b) stomachache c) backache d) earache
- 4 He has a toothache. He should go to the
a) carpenter b) dentist c) nurse d) teacher
- 5 The coach told us to be
a) careful b) careless c) sad d) bad
- 6 He has a He can't talk.
a) stomachache b) sorethroat c) backache d) earache

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

47



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

toothache - friends - earache - club - good

Fares is sad. He didn't have a 1) day at the club. Five people only came to the 2) today. Amr had an 3) from swimming. Lama had a 4) Tarek hurt his ankle. Two of his friends have a cold.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1 stomach - Does - hurt - your - ?

2 the dentist - Fares - went - to - .

3 about - friends - worried - I - am - my - .

4 used - a medicine - as - Doctors - honey - .

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

what's the matter

i can't talk.

Lesson (2 / A)

HOW ARE YOU?



Main Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

a cut	جرح	take medicine	بتناول الدواء
a bandage	ضمادة	playground	ملعب
come in	تفضل بالدخول	stay home	يبقى بالبيت
clean	ينظف	fall over	يسقط على
illness	مرض	body	جسم
fell over	يشعر أنه بخير	put ... on	يضع

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Ashraf : Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.

مرحبًا يا دكتور. أشعر أنني لست بخير.

Doctor : What's the matter, Ashraf?
Do you have a headache?

ما الأمر يا أشرف؟ هل أنت مصاب بالصداع؟

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.

لا، يا دكتور. لسبب مصابًا بالصداع.

Doctor : Do you have a stomachache?

هل لديك ألم في المعدة؟

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.

لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدي ألم في المعدة.

Doctor : Do you have a toothache?

هل لديك ألم في الأسنان؟

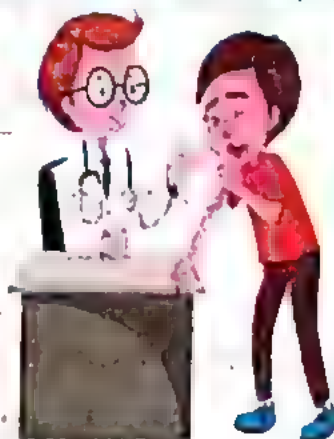
Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache.

لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدي ألم في الأسنان. لدي ... لدي ... أناشوا

I have ... I have ... Achoo!

Doctor : Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and
take this medicine.

أوه يا عزيزي! أنت مصاب بنزلة برد. ابق في المنزل ونم جيدًا وتناول هذا الدواء.



Help your child listen and read the dialog between
a doctor and a patient.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ الحوار بين الدكتور والمريض.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

49

Verb to "have" in the present simple

- We use (have) to talk about illness.

يستخدم الفعل (have) بمعنى (لديه / عنده / مصاب) مع الفرض.

Form البكوي

I / You / We / They / Plural noun → have

e.g. I **have** a headache.

He / She / It / Singular noun → has

e.g. Amr **has** a stomachache.

Negative النفي

I / You / We / They / Plural noun → don't have

e.g. I **don't have** a sore throat.

He / She / It / Singular noun → doesn't have

e.g. He **doesn't have** a stomachache.

Questions السؤال

(Yes / No) question:

Do + I / you / we / they / plural noun → have ...?

e.g. Do you **have** a headache?

- Yes, I **do**.

- No, I **don't**.

Does + he / she / it / singular noun → have ...?

e.g. Does Noha **have** a toothache?

- Yes, she **does**.

- No, she **doesn't**.

Wh- question

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + have ...?

e.g. What do you have?

- I have a cold.

e.g. What does she have?

- She has a backache.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 Amir a cut on his arm.

a) has b) have c) having d) haven't

2 Do they a sore throat?

a) has b) had c) having d) have

3 I have a headache. I have an earache.

a) doesn't b) do c) don't d) does

4 Sara have an earache?

a) Don't b) Do c) Is d) Does

5 Nahla a stomachache.

a) has b) is c) have d) was

6 you have a headache?

a) Do b) Does c) Are d) Have

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1 Amr (have) a stomachache. His stomach hurts.

2 I (doesn't) have a sore throat.

3 She doesn't (has) a cold.

4 They (has) an earache from swimming.

5 Do you (has) a toothache?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2 / B)

A SPECIAL HOSPITAL



Main Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

relative

أحد الأقارب

injection

unwell

ليس (على ما يرام / بصحة جيدة) - مريض

patient

staff

فريق العمل

helpful

crowded

مزدحم

corridor



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

bandage

ضمادة

alone

بمفرده

wonderful

member

عضو

busy

مشغول / مزدحم

hospital

India

دولة الهند

special

خاص / مميز

sick



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف أفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
treat	يعالج / treated	teach	يدرس / taught
change	يغير / changed	become	يصبح / became
travel	يسافر / traveled	know	يعرف / knew
return	يعود / returned	tell	يخبر / told



Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look after

يعني به

Not only.....but also

care for

يعني به

from all over the country

give injection

يعطي حقنة

in the playground

instead of

بدلاً من

turn ... into

Look and read. Which country is this hospital in?

A SPECIAL HOSPITAL

مستشفى متميزة

In a hospital in Bangalore, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members.



في مستشفى في بنجالور، وهي مدينة في جنوب الهند، هناك العديد من المرضى. تعالج المستشفى المرضى من جميع أنحاء البلاد. مع كل مريض، هناك حوالي عشرة أفراد من لعائلة.

In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their unwell relative. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful.

في الهند من غير المعتاد أن يذهب المريض إلى المستشفى وحده. تذهب العائلة عادة مع قريبهم المريض. وهذا يعني أن المستشفى غالبًا ما تكون مزدحمة ومشغولة جدًا. لكن بدلاً من إخبار أفراد الأسرة بأنهم لا يستطيعون زيارة أقاربهم المرضى يقوم الموظفون في المستشفى بعمل شيء مميز. إنهم يحولون المشكلة إلى شيء رائع.

They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

لديهم فصول لتعليم الأسرة الاعتناء بالشخص المريض. على سبيل المثال، يتعلم بعض الأشخاص كيف يغيرون الضمادات ويتعلم آخرون كيفية إعطاء الحقن.

Each afternoon, staff from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms.

بعد ظهر كل يوم، يقوم موظفو المستشفى بتحويل الممرات إلى فصول دراسية.

The nurses become teachers and the family members - and sometimes even the patients - become the students. Not only does this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return to the hospital now.

وتصبح الممرضات معلمات، ويصبح أفراد الأسرة - وأحيانًا المرضى - طلابًا. هذا لا يساعد فقط موظفي المستشفى، ولكنه أيضًا يساعد العائلات في رعاية أقاربهم عند عودتهم إلى المنزل. يعلم الموظفون أن الدروس تنجح حيث أنه لا يعود الكثير من المرضى إلى المستشفى الآن.

Help your child listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يسمع ويقرأ النص.

The Prefixes

السوابق / البادئات

- We can use the prefix (un-) to make the opposite of an adjective:

يمكن أن نستخدم البادئة (un-) لتكوين عكس صفة

un	well	بغير	unwell
	usual	عادي	unusual
	fit	لائق بدنياً	unfit
	safe	آمن	unsafe

- Some other prefixes that are used to show the opposite are (ir- / il- / im-).

البادئات الأخرى التي تستخدم لتكوين العكس هي (im- / il- / ir-).

Prefix	Use	Root word	Opposite word
ir	When the word begins with "r"	responsible	irresponsible
		regular	irregular
im	When the word begins with "m" or "p"	possible	impossible
		moral	immoral
il	When the word begins with "l"	legal	illegal

- 1 Rewrite these sentences so they mean the opposite. Use prefix (un-).

1 Tarek is happy.

2 The bridge is safe.

3 Dad is fit.

- 2 Add the prefix (ir-, il-, or im-) to these words.

1 legal

2 polite

3 moral

4 regular



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 There is a very busy in India.
a) restaurant b) park c) hospital d) school
- 2 people usually go to hospital with many relatives.
a) Sick b) Healthy c) Good d) Famous
- 3 The hospital is always very
a) empty b) crowded c) dirty d) clean
- 4 The ... began to teach people how to help their patients at home.
a) stuff b) staff c) teachers d) vets

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 The hospital treats
a) doctors b) nurses c) patients d) teachers
- 2 It's for a sick person to go to the hospital alone.
a) happy b) bad c) sad d) unusual
- 3 People learn to injections to patients in hospitals.
a) give b) stay c) make d) do
- 4 The is a group of people that work together.
a) injections b) patients c) relatives d) staff
- 5 Omar is happy but Tarek is
a) illegal b) irregular c) unhappy d) unfit
- 6 The bridge is dangerous. It's
a) safe b) unsafe c) impolite d) irregular

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

- 7 Mum is fit but dad is
 a) unhappy b) happy c) unfit d) sad

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

headache - cut - playground - bandage - cleaned

Nahla is sick. She fell over in the 1) She has a 2) on her arm. Her grandma 3) it and put a 4) on it.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their unwell relative. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The word "unwell" means
 a) fine b) cool c) sick d) nice
- 2 The hospital is always and busy
 a) quiet b) crowded c) happy d) empty

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What do the staff teach the visitors?

- 4 Mention two things people learn to do with sick relatives.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لكوين جمل صحيحة.

1 a - Ali - throat - sore - has - .

2 over - in - My - the - fell - brother - playground - .

3 she - have - a headache - Does - ?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

why do you take medicine

she doesn't have a cold.

7 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

"Illnesses"

Guiding words:

(have - headache - stay - toothache - dentist - a cold - medicine)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

57

Lesson (3 / A)

THE POWER OF HONEY



Main Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



a cut knee
جرح بالركبة



sunburn
كريم لحررق الشمس



sunscreen
كريم واق من الشمس



pills
أقراص الدواء



honey
عسل



lemon
ليمون



bandage
ضمادة



bee
نحلة



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

exactly

بالضبط

medical care

عناية طبية

injury

إصابة

perhaps

ربما

illness

مرض

recently

حديثًا / في الآونة الأخيرة

substance

مادة

scientist

عالم / عالمة

types

أنواع

cupboard

دولاب مطبخ

skin

جلد

power

قوة



Definitions

التعريفات

treatment	medical care to help you get better	علاج
wound	an injury that damages your skin	جرح
bacteria	very small things that can make you ill	بكتيريا
heal	to get better	يلتئم



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past		Present		Past
contain	يحتوى	contained		mix	يخلط	mixed
kill	يقتل	killed		damage	يتلف	damaged
use	يستخدم	used		know	يعرف	knew



Important expressions and prepositions

تعابيرات وحروف جر هامة

enjoy + v + ing	يستمتع بـ	sweet basbousa	بسبوسة حلوة المذاق
used as	يستخدم كـ	for breakfast	على الإفطار
treat illness	يعالج المرض	for thousands of years	لآلاف السنين
a jar of honey	برطمان عسل	good for	جيد لـ
on earth	على الأرض	make honey	يصنع العسل

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.



I cut my knee last week. My grandma put a bandage on it.

جرحت ركبتي الأسبوع الماضي. وضعت لي جدي ضمادة عليها.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa. But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses.

هل تحب العسل؟ ربما تستمتع بتناوله على الإفطار، أو ربما تستمتع به في بسبوسة حلوة لذيذة ولكن هل تعلم أن العسل ليس مجرد طعام؟ إنه يستخدم أيضًا كعلاج لبعض الإصابات والأمراض.

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

في بعض البلدان، يستخدم الأطباء العسل منذ آلاف السنين. تم استخدامه لأول مرة لعلاج الجروح من قبل الأطباء المصريين منذ حوالي 5000 عام. في الآونة الأخيرة، حاول العلماء بالضبط معرفة سبب كون العسل مفيدًا جدًا في الشفاء للجروح وعلاج الأمراض.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!



يعرف العلماء أن بعض أنواع العسل تحتوي على أشياء يمكن أن تساعد في قتل البكتيريا وهذا يساعد الجروح على الشفاء بسرعة أكبر. ومع ذلك يجب أن تكون حذرًا إن العسل الذي يستخدمه الأطباء هو عسل خاص وأن نأكله كعلاج. لأنه إذا كان لديك رصاصة من عسل في خزانتك يمكنك مزجه مع الحليب لتحسين السعال (الكحة)، ولكن لا تضعه على ركبتيك المبروكة.

Now read the full article. Check (✓) the facts that are mentioned:

- 1 Bees make honey.
- 2 Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth.
- 3 Doctors have used honey for thousands of years.
- 4 Some types of honey can kill bacteria.

☐
☐
☐
☐

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 When I have a throat, I can't talk.
a) sir b) sore c) sow d) sort
- 2 Do you have a cut?
a) knot b) knit c) knee d) knight
- 3 We use to protect us from the sun.
a) pills b) sunscreen c) screen d) bandage
- 4 I cut my knee last week. My grandma put a on it.
a) lemon b) bandage c) poster d) pill
- 5 Honey is used as a for some injuries.
a) bacteria b) wound c) treatment d) sunscreen
- 6 Honey is so good for wounds.
a) heating b) taking c) healing d) hating
- 7 I have a of honey.
a) jar b) piece c) spoon d) fork
- 8 make honey.
a) Bees b) Elephants c) Monkeys d) Lions
- 9 Doctors used for treatment.
a) honey b) water c) oil d) salt

2 Match the words with their meanings.

صل الكلمات بمعانيها.

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 1 treatment | a) to get better |
| 2 wound | b) very small things that can make you ill |
| 3 bacteria | c) medical care to help you get better |
| 4 heal | d) injury that damages your skin |
| | e) to get worse. |

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3 / B)

PRONUNCIATION

/f/



fan
مروحة



leaf
ورقة شجر



ferry
معدية / عبّارة

How to make the /f/ sound:

كيف ننطق الصوت /f/

- Rest your top teeth on your lower lip,
- Blow, but don't use your voice!

أرخ أسنانك العليا على الشفة السفلى.

انفخ لكن لا تستخدم صوتك.

- few عند قليل

- safe آمن

- life حياة

/v/



van
فانعة



leave
يغادر



view
منظر

How to make the /v/ sound:

كيف ننطق الصوت /v/

- Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.
- Blow, but do use your voice!

أرخ أسنانك العليا على الشفة السفلى.

انفخ ولكن استخدم صوتك.

- very جدًا

- save يحفظ

- live يعيش

I have a pet frog.

Hany is a vet.

I have a very long scarf.

Do you like vegetables?

Is there a fan in the van?

Leave the lovely lead.

A few friends saw the very fine view.

The ferry is very fast!

It's safe to save your money here!

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 When it is hot, I turn on the
a) fun b) fan c) foot d) tooth
- 2 A new grows on the tree.
a) leaf b) loaf c) life d) lift
- 3 A few friends saw the very fine of the trees.
a) view b) few c) safe d) ferry
- 4 The is very fast.
a) view b) fun c) ferry d) tree
- 5 It's to save your money here.
a) happy b) sad c) angry d) safe

2 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للكوين جمل صحيحة.

- 1 here - It's - safe - save - money - your - to - .

- 2 a long - have - Do - scarf - you - ?

- 3 she - television - watching - Does - like - ?

- 4 have - a - I - frog - pet - .

- 5 is - The - very - ferry - fast - .

- 6 long - I - scarf - have - a - very - .

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة A bar chart

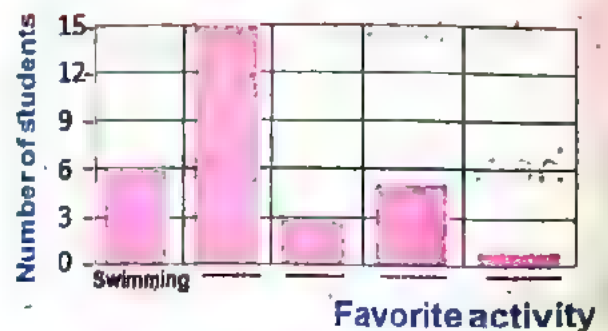
A bar chart is a way of showing information.

Look and read. Then label the bar chart:

Last week, 30 students were asked about their favorite free-time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

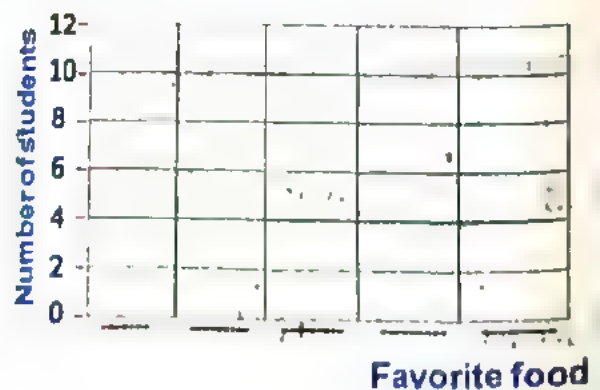
في الأسبوع الماضي تم سؤال ٣٠ طالباً عن أنشطة ولت الفراغ المفضلة لديهم. وما هي نتيجة الدراسة أي نشاط مفضل ذكره عدد من الطلاب؟

Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1



Now use this table to complete the bar chart:

Favorite food	No. of students
Ful medames	10
Koshari	6
Kofta	8
Fiteer baladi	12
Shawerma	4



Which food is the most popular?



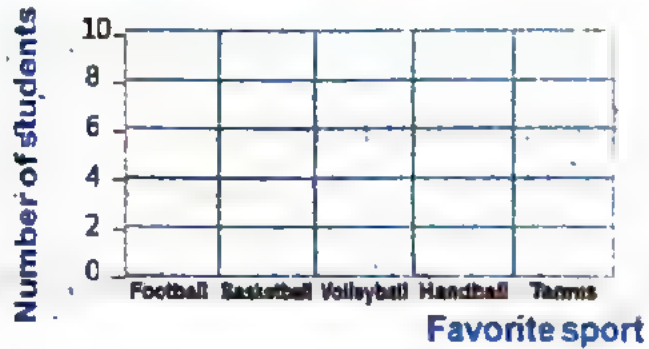
Fiteer baladi is the most popular food.



1 Look at the bar chart, shade then answer the questions.

انظر إلى التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة، ظل ثم أجب عن الأسئلة.

Favorite sport	No. of students
Football	8
Basketball	10
Volleyball	6
Handball	4
Tennis	2

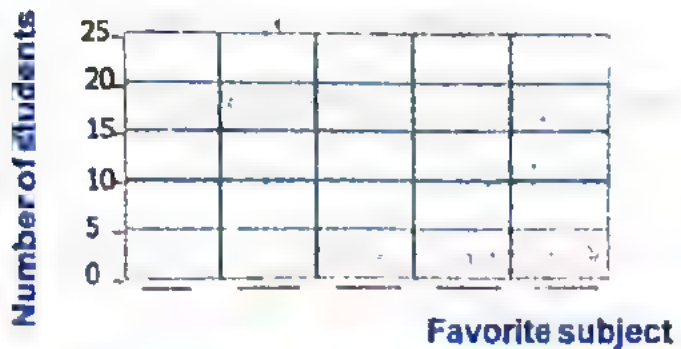


- What's the most favorite sport?
- What's the least favorite sport?
- How many students prefer volleyball?

2 Use the following table to complete the bar chart.

استخدم الجدول التالي للكمّل التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة.

Favorite subject	No. of students
English	25
Math	20
Art	5
History	10
Science	15



Help your child read and learn about a bar chart.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة.



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

ستمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 In some countries, has been used by doctors
a) honey b) water c) food d) fruit
- 2 It was first used to treat by Egyptian doctors
a) cold b) sorethroat c) wounds d) earache
- 3 The Egyptian doctors used honey to treat wounds
around years ago
a) 50 b) 5 c) 500 d) 5.000
- 4 have tried to find out why honey is so good
for treating illnesses.
a) Vets b) Engineers c) Scientists d) Teachers

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Bees make
a) juice b) honey c) water d) oil
- 2 Honey is the substance on Earth
a) sweetest b) worst c) fastest d) slowest
- 3 use a special honey as treatment
a) Teachers b) Vets c) Doctors d) Bakers
- 4 Some types of honey can bacteria
a) live b) kill c) break d) make
- 5 You can mix honey with milk to make your better
a) calf b) cough c) laugh d) enough

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

wounds - Scientists - Engineers - careful - bacteria

Bees make honey. 1) know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill 2) This helps to heal more quickly. You must be 4) however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey. Only that is safe to use as a treatment.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for breakfast. But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1) The underlined word "quickly" means
a) slow b) fast c) nice d) happy
- 2) Some types of honey can help bacteria.
a) do b) make c) take d) kill

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1) What's the main idea of the text?
- 2) How can you make your cough better?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للكوين جمل صحيحة.

you - Do - vegetables - like - ?

popular - is - Which - food - most - the - ?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (4 & 5)

- WRITING - PROJECT



Main Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن	insect bite cream	
experts	خبراء	safety pins	أمان
bandage	ضمادة	rubber bands	
sunscreen	كريم واقٍ من الشمس	medical gloves	
scissors	مقص	cleansing wipes	
soap	صابون	healthy	



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

desert	صحراء	poster	ملصق	presentation	تقديم /
pack	يعبأ	headings	عناوين	important	
useful	نافع / مفيد	decide	يقرر	especially	
remember	يتذكر	list	قائمة		



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
need	يحتاج	needed		enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	
focus	يركز	focused		pack	يعبأ / يجهز الحقيبة	packed	
check	يفحص	checked		remember	يتذكر	remembered	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
spend	بمضي spent	make	يصنع made
keep	يحفظ kept	take	يأخذ took



Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف دالة

first-aid kit

صندوق الإسعافات الأولية

In addition to

بالإضافة إلى

a school trip

رحلة مدرسية

make sure

تأكد

plenty of water

الكثير من الماء

responsible for

مسئول عن

a great way

طريقة رائعة

focus on

يركز على

do exercise

يتمرن

at school

في المدرسة

lots of

الكثير من

go to bed

يذهب ليعيش

enough sleep

نوم كافٍ

work well

يعمل بشكل جيد

in case

في حالة

at the end

في نهاية

Healthy things to do

أشياء صحية تفعلها

playing sport

لعب الرياضة

eating vegetables

تناول الخضروات

reading books

قراءة الكتب

getting enough sleep

حصول من نسط كافٍ من النوم

visiting a doctor

زيارة الطبيب

spending time with friends

قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء

drinking plenty of water

شرب الكثير من الماء



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

69



Read the following presentation.

العرض التقديمي التالي.

My presentation today is about staying healthy.

It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.



أعرض اليوم عن البقاء بصحة جيدة. من المهم تناول الأطعمة الصحية مثل الفاكهة والخضراوات واتبع نظام غذائي متوازن. هناك الكثير من الأشياء الأخرى التي يمكننا القيام بها للاعتناء بصحتنا.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

يجب القيام ببعض التمارين كل يوم. من المهم جدًا أن نبلي جسمك في حركة. إن ممارسة الرياضة في المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء طريقة جيدة.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

يمكنك القيام به وهو الذهاب إلى الفراش مبكرًا. من المهم الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم. يعتقد الخبراء أنك يجب أن تنام ما بين سبع ساعات كل ليلة.

In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن أحد أفضل الطرق للبقاء بصحة جيدة هو أن تقضي وقتًا مع أصدقائك. ليس فقط جسمك هو ما تحتاج للحفاظ عليه، بل يجب أن تخصص وقتًا للتركيز على السعادة أيضًا. إن قضاء وقت مع عائلتك وأصدقائك طريقة رائعة لتفعل ذلك.

Read Asma's presentation again. Complete the sentences.

- 1 Asma says it's important to eat
- 2 Asma says that is a good way to exercise.
- 3 You should sleep between hours every night.
- 4 Spending time with your friends is good for your

Activities

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

To stay healthy, it's very important to drink plenty of

- a) juice b) water c) milk d) tea

This keeps your body working

- a) badly b) quickly c) fast d) well

You should have food, too.

- a) unhealthy b) health c) healthy d) bad

..... make us healthy and fit.

- a) Sports b) Foods c) Sweets d) Games

Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

Asmaa says it's important to have diet.

- a) different b) bad c) unhealthy d) balanced

Asmaa says that sport is a good way to exercise.

- a) having b) playing c) eating d) making

You should between 8 and 9 hours every night.

- a) eat b) sleep c) run d) swim

You should make time to focus being happy.

- a) on b) in c) at d) of

..... think you should get enough sleep every night.

- a) Teachers b) Vets c) Nurses d) Experts

My presentation today is about healthy.

- a) studying b) doing c) staying d) running

You should drink of water.

- a) plant b) planet c) plan d) plenty

Your class is responsible packing the first-aid kit.

- a) for b) to c) at d) on

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

71

- 9 Take in case someone cuts their knee
 a) bandages b) soap c) safety pins d) scissors
- 10 Nurses and doctors wear medical
 a) soap b) gloves c) wipes d) bandages

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

أكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

body - healthy - unhealthy - exercise - balanced

My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is really important to eat 1) foods and to have a 2) diet. You should do some 3) everyday. It's very important to keep your 4) moving.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentence.
 الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1 should - You - foods - healthy - eat -

2 of - you - Do - plenty - water - drink - ?

3 spend - his friends - with - time - Omar - Does - ?

5 Write a paragraph of about (30) words. بفقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding elements: "How to stay healthy"
 (plenty of water - exercise every day)

on Unit (8)

Vocabulary

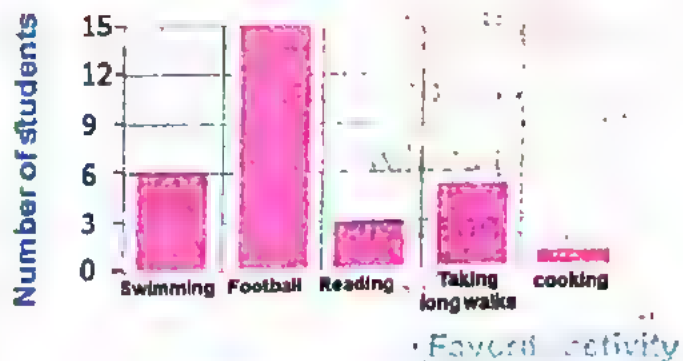
illness	أمراض	a cough	سعال / كحة	a cold	برد
toothache	ألم في الأسنان	stomachache	ألم في المعدة	headache	صداع
dentist	طبيب الأسنان	pills	أقراص الدواء	heal	يلتئم
shoulder	كف	injection	حقنة طبية	relatives	أقارب
ankle	كاحل القدم	patient	مريض	expert	خبير
hospital	مستشفى	unwell	مرضى / ليس بخير	honey	عسل
bandage	ضمادة	staff	فريق عمل	medicine	دواء
earache	ألم في الأذن	corridor	ممر / طرفة	lemon	ليمون
helpful	متعاون	sunscreen	كريم واقي من الشمس	healthy	صحي
backache	ألم في الظهر	a sore throat	التهاب الحلق	cut	جرح

Pronunciation

fan	leaf	life	ferry	few	safe
van	leave	live	very	view	save

Bar charts التمثيل البياني بالاعمدة

Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1



Help your child revise unit (8).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثامنة.

Verb to "have" in the present simple

- We use (have) to talk about illness.

الفعل (have) بمعنى (لديه / عنده / مصاب) مع المريض

Form التكوين

Subject + (have / has)

eg. I **have** a headache.

Negative النفي

Subject + (don't have / doesn't have)

eg. I **don't have** a sore throat.

Question السؤال

(Yes / No) question:

Do / Does + subject + have ...?

eg. Do you **have** a headache? - Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

Wh- question

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + have ...?

eg. What do you **have**?

eg. What does she **have**?

Opposite Prefixes بادئات تعطي عكس المعنى

un	well	بخير	unwell	غير عادي
	usual	عادي	unusual	غير عادي
ir	responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
	regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
im	possible	ممكن	impossible	مستحيل
	polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
il	legal	قانوني	illegal	غير قانوني

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

"Illnesses"

There are a lot of illnesses. We can have headache, earache, backache, stomachache, toothache, cold and sore throat. When we have a headache, we should have a rest. When we have a toothache, we should go to the dentist. When we have a cold, we should stay home and take medicine. When we have sore throat, we can't talk.

"At the doctor's"

I fell over in the playground. I have a cut on my leg. It really hurts. The doctor saw it. He cleaned it. He put a bandage on it. He gave me medicine. He asked me to rest and eat healthy food.

"Honey"

We enjoy eating honey for breakfast. It's also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. It was used by Egyptian doctors to treat wounds 5.000 years ago. Some types of honey can kill bacteria. It can make your cough better.

"Staying healthy"

It's important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. We should do some exercise every day. Playing sport is a good way to exercise. We should have enough sleep every night. We should spend time with our friends and family, too.

Dictation on Unit (8)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	صداع		في الأذن
	زكام / نزلة برد		في الأسنان
	كحة / سعال		في الظهر
	التهاب الحلق		في المعدة

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	ملعب		روح
	متعاون		عندة
	مريض		ظلمة
	مزحمة		لطف على
	حقنة طبية		تناول الدواء

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	ليمون		زئبق الدواء
	عسل		يرى وافي من الشمس
	نحلة		أرم لحروق الشمس
	مرض		أرم بالركبة
	علاج		شم
	جيد		ألمة
	شاحنة		ألمة
	يفادر		ألمة
	منظر		ألمة

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	صابون		ألم مطاطي
	ملصق		ألمتي طبعي
	يفرد		ألمتي مثلية
	صندوق الإسعافات الأولية		ألمتي

Activities on Unit (8)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 say that some types of honey can kill bacteria.
a) Vets b) Scientists c) Teachers d) Patients
- 2 This helps wounds to heal more
a) quickly b) slowly c) happily d) hard
- 3 The honey that use is a special honey.
a) teachers b) vets c) engineers d) doctors
- 4 You can mix some honey with milk to make your better.
a) cough b) sore throat c) headache d) cold

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 I have to go to the dentist. I have a
a) headache b) stomachache c) toothache d) earache
- 2 I hurt my when I was running today. I can't walk.
a) ear b) leg c) nose d) shoulder
- 3 I can't talk. I have a
a) sore throat b) headache c) earache d) backache
- 4 When your head hurts. You have a
a) earache b) backache c) cold d) headache

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

helpful - patients - staff - crowded - relatives

The text is about a hospital in India. It is a very 1) place that treats 2) from all over the country. People usually travel to the hospital with many 3) so this means the hospital is always very crowded. At the hospital, the teach the family members how to do useful things.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. You should do some exercise every day. Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night. In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The adjective "healthy" means for our bodies.
a) good b) bad c) ugly d) late
- 2 think you should get enough sleep every night.
a) Doctors b) Experts c) Students d) Nurses

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 How many hours should we sleep every night?
- 4 Who do we need to spend time with?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- 1 of - kill - Some - bacteria - honey - types - can - .
.....

- 2 you - the - club - a good day - at - Did - have - ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 Does she (has) a sore throat?
- 2 They (doesn't) have a car.

7 Punctuate the following.

is there a fan in the big van

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding questions: "Staying healthy"

- What things should you do? - What things shouldn't you do?

1 Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Fares didn't have a day at the club.
a) bad b) long c) good d) short
- people didn't come to the club today.
a) Eight b) Six c) Five d) Three
- Tarek hurt his
a) head b) ankle c) eye d) arm

2 Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- This text is about a In India.
a) restaurant b) café c) hospital d) school
- It is a very busy place that treats
a) birds b) cats c) animals d) patients
- People usually travel to the hospital with many
a) doctors b) relatives c) foods d) drinks

2 Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

arm - worry - matter - hurt

- Nurse : Come in Nahla. What's the 1) ?
Nahla : I fell over the playground.
Nurse : Oh, dear. Where does it 2) ?
Nahla : Here. I have a cut on my 3)
Nurse : Oh, yes, I see. Don't 4)

Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

should - drink - healthy - balanced diet

- Toka : Is it important to stay 1) ?
Basmalla : Yes, it is very important.
Toka : What 2) I do to stay healthy?
Basmalla : You should 3) plenty of water.
Toka : What else?
Basmalla : You should have a 4)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

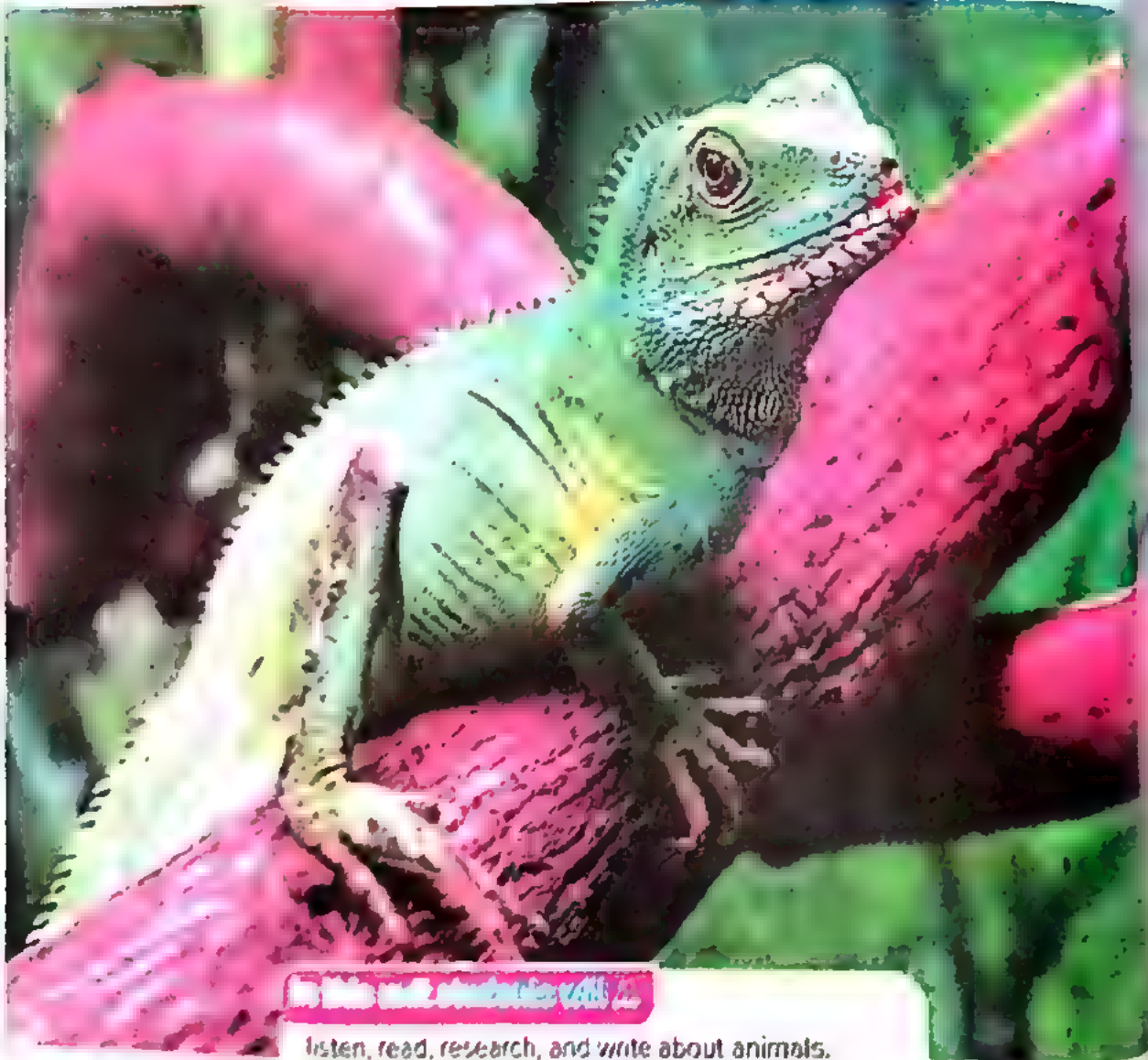
Unit

9

My favorite animal

حيواني المفضل

List



In this unit, students will:

listen, read, research, and write about animals.

listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.

talk about ability now and in the past.

learn how to say /w/ and /y/ sounds.

write an email about an unusual animal.

research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.

Lesson (1)

WILDLIFE

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



penguin
طائر البطريق



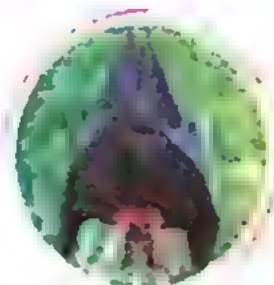
kangaroo
كنغر



panda
ناب المائتا



dolphin
دولفين



bat
خفاش



snail
حلمون



lion
أسد



parrot
ببغاء

your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

81



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

garden	حديقة	beautiful	جميل	colorful
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	pouch	كيس / جراب (الكنفرا)	ocean
different	مختلف	bamboo	خيزران	wonderful
awesome	مذهل / مذهل	wildlife	حياة برية	Africa
shell	صدقة	Australia	استراليا	China
snow	ثلج	wildlife park		

بداية البرية



Conjugation of verbs

نصريف أفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
jump	قفز jumped
stay	بمكث stayed
repeat	يكرر repeated
look	يبدو looked
enjoy	يستمتع enjoyed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
fly	يطير flew
swim	يسبح swam
feed	يطعم fed
hide	يختبئ hid
do	يفعل did



Important expressions and prepositions

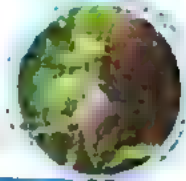
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at night	ليلة	have got to	ل / يجب أن
swim in a group	يسبح في مجموعة	have a day out	وقفا بالخارج
stay in	بمكث في	in a special place	خاص
look so cool	يبدو رائعاً جداً	do a project	شروع
in the dark	في الظلام	at school	مدرسة

pad and learn.

lives in the garden. It has a shell. It doesn't
have legs or arms.

الخطرون يعيش في الحديقة. له صدفة وليس له أرجل أو أذرع.



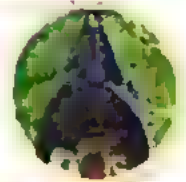
lives in Australia. It Jumps on two legs.

الكنغر يعيش في أستراليا ويقفز على ساقين.



flies at night. It sleeps upside down on trees.

الخفاش يطير ليلاً ويتنام مقلداً على الأشجار.



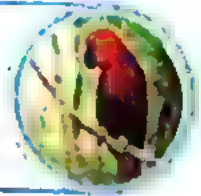
lives on ice and snow. It's black and white.
can swim, but it can't fly.

البطريق يعيش على الثلج والجليد. إنه أبيض وأسود. يستطيع السباحة، لكنه لا يستطيع الطيران.



is a bird. It is very beautiful and colorful. It
lives in the rainforest.

المبغاء طائر. إنه جميل وملون. يعيش في الغابة المطيرة.



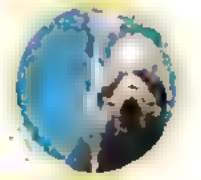
lives in Africa. It's a very big cat. It's very
strong.

الأسد يعيش في أفريقيا. إنه قط ضخم (كبير). إنه قوي جداً.



is very friendly. It swims in a group with
its family in the ocean.

الدلفين ودود جداً. يسبح في مجموعة مع أسرته في المحيط.



lives in China. It eats bamboo. It's big, and
black and white.

يعيش الباندا في الصين. يأكل نبات الخيزران. إنه كبير ولونه أسود وأبيض.



help your child read about animals.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الحيوانات.

Listen and read.

مع واقرأ.

Ramez : Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.
هيا لقد قضيت يوماً رائعاً في الخارج مع عائلتي بالأمس.

Ayman : Where did you go?
أين ذهبت؟

Ramez : I went to the new wildlife park - it was awesome!
ذهبت إلى متنزه الحياة البرية الجديد - كان رائعاً

Ayman : What did you see? Could you go near the lions?
أرأيت؟ هل استطعت الاقتراب من الأسود؟

Ramez : No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch - it's so sweet!
بئساً في السيارة. لكن استطعنا رؤيتهم من خلال الأشجار. كانت حيوانات الكنغر شيقة أيضاً. عندما يكونون صغاراً يمكنهم الجلوس داخل جيب أمهاتهم - إنه جميل جداً.

Ayman : What birds did you see?
الطيور التي رأيتها؟

Ramez : Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!
كثير، ولكن المفضلة لدي كانت الببغاوات. كانت جميلة جداً ويمكنهم التحدث! قلنا لهم بعض الكلمات لكي يكرروها.

Ayman : What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?
ماذا عن الحيوانات التي تحب الجو البارد؟ هل رأيت أيًا منها؟

Ramez : Yes, penguins! They were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. We fed them some fish! I love penguins - they can swim so well and they look so cool!
نعم، طيور البطريق! كانوا في مكان مخصص بالداخل. كان بارد مثل الثلاجة. أطعمناهم بعض الأسماك! أنا أحب طيور البطريق - يمكنهم السباحة جيئاً جداً وشكلهم رائع جداً.

Ayman : Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?
واو! كان هناك أي شيء أردت رؤيته ولكنك لم تستطع؟

Ramez : The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark!
الخفافيش. أقوم بمشروع عن الخفافيش في المدرسة، لذلك أردت حقاً أن أراهم! لكنهم جميعاً مختبئون ولم يمكن من رؤيتهم في الظلام.

Ayman : Oh well, it sounds amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now that's the most wildlife I'll see today!
حسنٌ يبدو الأمر رائعاً. يجب أن أطعم أرني الآن - هذا هو أكثر الحيوانات البرية التي سأراها اليوم.

Activities

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع

وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

Last week Omar went to a park.

- a) ride b) wildlife c) beach d) sea

Omar went with his

- a) family b) brother c) friends d) grandpa

His favorite birds are the

- a) parrots b) sparrows c) macaws d) doves

He was sad because he didn't see the

- a) lions b) kangaroos c) penguins d) bats

Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ

واختار الإجابة الصحيحة

A lives in Australia. It jumps on two legs.

- a) bat b) lion c) panda d) kangaroo

A is a very big cat. It's very strong.

- a) parrot b) panda c) lion d) dolphin

A is a bird. It's very beautiful and colorful.

- a) dolphin b) parrot c) panda d) lion

A panda eats

- a) insects b) paper c) bamboo d) snakes

A can't fly.

- a) parrot b) penguin c) bat d) bird

I've got to my rabbit.

- a) feed b) eat c) run d) play

When kangaroos are little, they can sit inside their mom's

- a) coach b) couch c) pouch d) bed

..... like to swim in a group with their family in the ocean.

- a) Lions b) Bats c) Pandas d) Dolphins

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

85

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

أكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

project - parrots - park - enjoyed - lions

Yesterday, Ramez went to a wildlife 1) with his family. He 2) it very much. They saw lots of different animals like 3) , kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds the 4)

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

كلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1 colorful - and - Parrots - birds - are - beautiful - .

2 did - go - Where - yesterday - you - ?

3 went - to - Ramez - park - a wildlife - .

4 did - What - see - you - there - ?

5 Punctuate the following.

علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

did Hamza see any animals

6 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

أب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

A visit to a wildlife park

Guiding questions:

1- Where did you go?

2- Who did you go with?

3- How did you go?

4- What did you see?

5- How did you find it?

Lesson (2 / A)

WHAT COULD YOU DO?



Vocabulary

المفردات

Italian	اللغة الإيطالية	cousin	ابن العم / الخال	chess	لعبة الشطرنج
German	اللغة الألمانية	busy	مشغول	fast	سرعة - سريع
French	اللغة الفرنسية	amazed	متدهش	able to	قادر على
quickly	بسرعة	France	فرنسا	basketball	كرة السلة
month	شهر	age	عمر	when	عندما

Can - Can't

Usage

الاستخدام

We use "can" to talk about something we are able to do in the present.

نستخدم "can" للتعبير عن شيء نستطيع فعله في المضارع.

Form

التكوين

Subject (الفاعل) + can + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. Birds can fly.

e.g. I can play basketball.

Negative

النفى

Subject (الفاعل) + can't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. Penguins can't fly.

e.g. I can't speak Italian.

Yes / No question

السؤال بـ "هل"

Can + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

e.g. - Can a parrot fly?

- Yes, it can.

Write can or can't :

Bats fly very fast.

2 Snails move quickly.

Parrots fly.

4 Pandas drive a car.

Help your child use "can" to express ability in the present.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم (can) للتعبير عن القدرة في المضارع.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5) 87



Could - Couldn't

Usage الاستخدام

We use "could" to talk about something we were able to do in the past.

"could" للتعبير عن شيء كنا نستطيع فعله في الماضي.

Form التكوين

Subject (الفاعل) + could + inf. (المصدر)

eg. I could speak French.

eg. I could ride a bike.

Negative النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + couldn't + inf. (المصدر)

eg. I couldn't take the metro so I had to walk.

Yes / No question السؤال بـ "هل"

Could + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

eg. - Could you write when you were five? - Yes, I could.

Note:

We use (can / can't), (could / couldn't) with the infinitive without "to".

مع "can / can't"، "could / couldn't" مع صيغة المصدر بدون "to".

Write could or couldn't:

- 1 When I was two, I use a computer.
- 2 I read when I was 0.
- 3 My sister play chess when she was five, but she when she was eight.
- 4 My cousin run when he was a boy.
- 5 I swim when I was a baby, and everyone was amazed.
- 6 you speak English when you were five?

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

Birds fly.

- a) can b) can't c) couldn't d) isn't

Bats fly very fast.

- a) couldn't b) can't c) can d) isn't

Penguins fly.

- a) can b) could c) can't d) isn't

When I was two, I use a computer.

- a) can b) can't c) couldn't d) isn't

I read when I was one.

- a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

..... you speak English when you were five?

- a) Can b) Could c) Is d) Has

I swim when I was a baby and everyone was amazed.

- a) can b) could c) can't d) isn't

I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I

- a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

Last year, he run very quickly, but now he can.

- a) can't b) could c) can d) couldn't

Sorry, I help you with your homework. I'm busy.

- a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1 I can't (speaks) Italian.

2 He (can) speak French when he lived in France.

3 (Can) you ride a bike when you were three?

4 When I was two, I (can't) use a computer.

5 My cousin couldn't (running) when he was a baby.

6 Last year, she couldn't run very quickly, but now she (could).

7 Sorry, I (can) help you with your homework. I'm busy.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2 / B)

THE TRAVELERS AND THE TREE



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

famous	مشهور	rest	راحة	shelter	مأوى
experts	خبراء	wind	رياح	traders	تجار
travelers	مسافرين	shade	ظل	value	قيمة
lake	بحيرة	moral	أخلاقي / مغزى	humans	إنسان
fable	حكاية رمزية	tired	متعب	field	حقل
land	أرض	area	منطقة	idea	فكرة
country	دولة	wide	عريض	dry	جاف



Conjugation of verbs

تصرفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
stop	stopped
rest	rested
save	saved
enjoy	enjoyed
thank	thanked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
fall	fell
wake up	woke up
keep	kept
give	gave

Important expressions and prepositions

بعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

live for	يعيش لمدة	give shelter	يعطي مأوى
give value	يقدر / يعطي قيمة	rest under	يستريح تحت
wake up	يستيقظ	save life	ينقذ حياة
look around	ينظر حول	important for	هام لـ
move across	يتحرك / ينتقل عبر	a meeting point for	نقطة التقاء لـ
fall asleep	يستغرق سريعا في النوم	look up	ينتظر لأعلى
keep us cool	تبقىنا باردين	neither of them	لا أحد منهم
feel sorry	يشعر بالحزن	one of them	أحدهم

Study the following

Word	Meaning	
a breeze	is a little wind	نسيم
useless	when something is useless, we can't use it	عديم الفائدة
ungrateful	when someone is ungrateful, they don't thank others for doing something good	جاحد / ناكث للجميل
comfortable	when something is comfortable, it's nice to sit on or wear	مريح
meeting point	is somewhere where people meet	نقطة التقاء

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

يقول

Why was the tree angry?

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shade and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.

مرة كان هناك شجرة كبيرة قديمة جدًا في أرض حارة وجافة. قد عاشت مئات سنوات عديدة في هذا البلد. كان جذعها عريضًا جدًا ولها فروع خضراء كثيرة. كانت الشجرة الوحيدة التي تعيش في تلك المنطقة وقد وفرت الظل والراحة لمئات المسافرين الذين كانوا يمشون عبر هذه المنطقة. كانت قريبة من أربع مدن والعديد من القرى في منطقتها وكانت نقطة التقاء للتجار.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

يوم ما كان مسافران جديدين في المنطقة يسيران في الحقل وراى الشجرة. كان يوم حار وجاف جدًا. قال أحدهما: "دعنا نجلس تحت تلك الشجرة حيث يوجد بعض الظل." "هذه فكرة جيدة." قال له صديقه. استريحوا تحت الشجرة وشربوا بعض الماء. ثم استمتعوا بالظل والرياح الباردة. عندما كانوا متعبين، سرعان ما ناموا.

When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no nuts or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

عندما استيقظا شعر أحد المسافرين بالجوع. لم يكن لدى أي منهما أي طعام في حقائبهما. نظر أحدهما إلى فروع الشجرة وقال: "هذه الشجرة لا فائدة منها. ليس بها طعام لنا. لا توجد مكسرات أو فاكهة على أغصانها." "لكنها توفر الظل وتبقى باردة." أجاب الآخر.

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so ungrateful?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here." The traveler looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry.

لكن الشجرة سمعت كلام المسافر الأول وكانت غاضبة. وقالت: "كيف يمكنك أن تكون بهذه الطريقة؟ لقد أتيت إليّ وأنا حار ومرح، وفرت لك مكانًا باردًا ومريحًا للنوم. ربما أنقذت حياتك. انظر، لا يوجد مكان آخر بارد للنوم بالقرب من هنا." نظر المسافر حولهم وراى أن الشجرة كانت على حق. شعر بالأسف الشديد.

Activities

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

There was a very big old in a hot, dry land.

- a) tree b) bird c) fish d) animal

It had lived for many

- a) days b) weeks c) years d) months

Its was very wide and it had many green branches.

- a) branch b) leaf c) trunk d) root

It was because it was the only tree where it lived.

- a) bad b) useless c) ungrateful d) famous

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

A breeze is a little

- a) wind b) lake c) sea d) river

When something is useless, we use it.

- a) can b) can't c) may d) could

When someone is He doesn't thank others for doing something good.

- a) grateful b) ungrateful c) great d) sad

When something is comfortable. It's to sit on or wear.

- a) nice b) bad c) difficult d) horrible

A meeting point is somewhere where people

- a) cook b) meet c) live d) draw

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من العريم.

trunk - dry - meeting - country - shelter

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot 1) and. It gave 2) and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the 3) It was a 4) point for traders.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

93

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

الأمس التالي واجب عن الأسئلة.

One day two travelers, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no nuts or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The underlined word exhausted means very
 a) happy b) tired c) glad d) tall
- 2 There are no nuts or fruit on the tree
 a) roots b) branches c) trunk d) bark

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1 Summarize the second paragraph.
- 2 Was the tree useless?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل مذبحة.

- 1 were - tired - The travelers - very - .

 2 important - are - Why - humans - for - trees - ?

6 Write a paragraph of about (30) words. حب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Trees

Guiding words:

(plant - useful - fruits - shade - shelter)

Lesson (3 / A)

THIS IS SO INTERESTING!

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



teacher
معلم



reader
قارئ



climber
متسلق



footballer
لاعب كرة قدم



farmer
مزارع



traveler
مسافر

The suffix "-er"

- We add the suffix "er" to the end of words to make a noun.

نضيف اللاحقة "er" إلى نهاية بعض الكلمات لتكون اسم.

teach → teacher | write → writer | farm → farmer

✓ Complete the sentences with words from the box.

(reader - traveler - footballer)

- 1 My grandfather was a great He traveled to many great places around the world.
- 2 A famous Egyptian in England is Mohamed Elneny - he plays for Arsenal.
- 3 My cousin is a very good, He reads about 20 books a year.

Help your child learn and use the suffix "er"

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ويستخدم اللاحقة "er".

AL-BAHER - Connect (5) 95

Verbs ending in "-ed" and "-ing"

We add (-ed or -ing) to a verb to make an adjective.

"ed" أو "ing" لتكون صفة.

An adjective that ends in (-ing) describes (what a thing is like).

|| (-ing) تصف (كيف يبدو الشيء).

- English was interesting!

- The film is exciting.

An adjective that ends in (-ed) describe (how a person feels about something).

تنتهي بـ (-ed) تصف (ما يشعر به الشخص تجاه شيء ما).

- I'm very interested in history.

- He is so excited.

Note:

If the verb ends in (-e) we take off the (-e) and add (-ed) or (-ing).

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (-e) نحذف ويضاف له (-ed) أو (-ing).

Verbs

Adjectives

surprise

متفاجئ surprised

متفاجئ surprising

متفاجئ

interest

مهتم interested

مهمته interesting

annoy

مزعج annoyed

مزعج annoying

amaze

دهش amazed

دهش amazing

tire

متعب tired

متعب / مرهق tiring

متعب / متعب

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 I'm very in history.
a) interesting b) exciting c) interested d) boring
- 2 History is so I like it.
a) interested b) interesting c) boring d) excited
- 3 The film was so
a) bored b) boring c) excited d) interested
- 4 He was by his cruel words.
a) annoy b) annoying c) annoyed d) boring
- 5 He worked all day. He was
a) tired b) excited c) bored d) tiring
- 6 My favorite is Miss Salwa. She's very friendly and kind in the classroom.
a) teacher b) farmer c) climber d) reader
- 7 Dalia is in unusual homes.
a) interesting b) interested c) amazing d) tiring
- 8 My brother is a He travels to a lot of places.
a) teacher b) farmer c) climber d) traveler
- 9 A grows food for us.
a) teacher b) traveler c) farmer d) reader
- 10 A is someone who plays a famous sport with a ball.
a) reader b) teacher c) climber d) footballer

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 I was so (boring) with that movie.
- 2 History is so (interested)!
- 3 I was (surprising) when I saw him.
- 4 I'm very (interesting) in English.
- 5 The party was (amazed).
- 6 Ali was (tiring), so he went to bed.

Help your child deal with such questions

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

97

Lesson
(3 / B)

PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat.

سمع وردد.

/w/



wheel
عجلة



west
غرب



watermelon
بطيخ



wet
مبتل

/v/



vet
طبيب بيطري



violin
كمان



vest
ثوب / ضليزي / شتره



volcano
بركان

/v/ and /w/ are both voiced sounds. This means that if you place your hand on your throat. You can feel the vibration when you say them.

أصوات /v/ و /w/ كلاهما أصوات مجهورة. وهذا يعني أنه إذا وضعت يدك على حلقك، يمكنك أن تشعر بالاهتزاز عندما تقولها.

➔ To pronounce /v/, press your top teeth against your bottom lip.

نطق الصوت /v/ ، اضغط أسنانك العليا على شفك السفلي.

village قرية

vase فازة / زهرية

violin كمان

volcano بركان

➔ To pronounce /w/, make a tight circle with your lips.

نطق الصوت /w/ ، اصنع دائرة ضيقة بشفك.

winter شتاء

wet مبتل

whale حوت

water ماء

Look and read.

Last Wednesday I decided to travel west
in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking
for a volcano but I had some problems.

I met some whales and they turned over my
boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate watermelon
to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano,
but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!



يوم الأربعاء الماضي، قررت السفر إلى الغرب بقاربي مرتدياً ستري. كنت أبحث عن بركان ولكن واجهت بعض المشكلات. قابلت بعض
الحيتان وقاموا بقلب قاري. وكنت مضطراً أن أجلس على آلة الكمان الخاصة بي حتى ابقي طافية! أكلت ثمرة البطيخ حتى أبقي بصحة
جيدة ووصلت إلى الشاطئ. لم أجد البركان ولكنني تقابلت مع بعض الأطباء البيطريين وأدخلوني إلى بيتي في قريتي.

Look and write the missing sound.



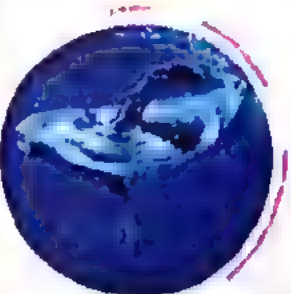
_iolin



_est



_atermelon



_hales



_heel



_et

Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5) 99



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 Mohamed Elneny is a famous ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.
 a) swimmer b) singer c) footballer d) actor
- 2 Mohamed Elneny is a famous footballer in
 a) America b) Cairo c) England d) Tokyo
- 3 He plays for
 a) Al-Ahly b) Al-Zamalek c) Arsenal d) Liverpool
- 4 Mohamed Elneny is
 a) English b) French c) Egyptian d) American

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 My uncle is a professional (مُحترف) He goes up some very high mountains.
 a) teacher b) traveler c) reader d) climber
- 2 That long walk was very I want to relax.
 a) tired b) bored c) tiring d) excited
- 3 Mr Mahmoud is an excellent He plants the best tomatoes in town.
 a) teacher b) farmer c) reader d) climber
- 4 The film was I enjoyed it.
 a) interesting b) interested c) bored d) excited
- 5 The match was exciting, so Ali was
 a) interesting b) boring c) excited d) amazing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

vet - vest - boat - whales - volcano

Last Wednesday I decided to travel west in my boat wearing my 1) I was looking for a 2) but I had some problems, I met some 3) and they turned over my 4)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Last Wednesday I decided to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano but I had some problems. I met some whales and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The underlined word "vets" means doctors for
 a) plants b) people c) cars d) animals
- 2 The writer was looking for a
 a) tornado b) volcano c) cave d) tent

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What animals did the writer meet?
- 4 What did the writer have to do?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

- 1 movie - was - That - boring - so - .

- 2 looking - were - What - for - you - ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 English is (interested).

- 2 Ali is so (exciting).

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- ⇒ can you say vase quickly

Lessons (4 & 5)

- WRITING - PROJECT



Vocabulary

المفردات

dugong	حيوان الأطوم / بقرة البحر	seabed	أرض البحر
nickname	اسم مستعار (كنية)	unusual	غير عادي
sea cow	بقرة البحر	informal language	لغة غير رسمية
See you soon!	أراك قريباً	How are things?	كيف الأحوال؟
just a quick note	مجرد ملاحظة سريعة	All the best	أتمنى لك كل خير

Tip!

Writing an email

كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني

- 1- Begin your email with Dear or Hi and the person's name.

أهلاً بك الإلكتروني (عزيزي) أو (مرحباً) واسم الشخص.

- 2- Say why you are writing. Use phrases like (I'm writing to tell you that...).

لماذا تكتب. استخدم عبارات مثل (أكتب لأخبرك بأنه...).

- 3- Give one idea in a paragraph and expand on it - look how Amir mentions the dugong, then describes it..

أفكار واحدة في الفقرة وتوسع فيها. انظر كيف يذكر أمير حيوان الأطوم ثم يصفه.

- 4- When writing to a friend, you can use informal language, e.g. words like awesome and cool, contractions like I'm, and phrases like How's life? and How are things?

الكتابة إلى صديق، يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية، على سبيل المثال كلمات مثل "رائع وجميل"، واختصارات مثل "I'm"، وعبارات مثل "كيف هي الدنيا؟ وكيف تسير الأمور؟"

- 5- End your email with phrases like Write soon, Hope to hear from you soon, See you soon, All the best, or Bye for now, and then your name.

انتهاء رسالة البريد الإلكتروني بعبارات مثل "أكتب لي قريباً، أتمنى أن أسمع عنك قريباً، أراك قريباً، أتمنى لك التوفيق، أو إلى اللقاء، لأن، ثم اسمك."

How to write an email.

From : البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل
 To : البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه
 Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Dear / Hi + المرسل إليه

Introduction: المقدمة

Main part

الجزء الرئيسي

Conclusion: الخاتمة

Signature التوقيع

From : Amir
 To : Tamer
 Subject : Unusual animals

Dear Tamer, عزيزي تامر،

Thanks for your email. How are things?

It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team once a week.

شكراً على رسالة البريد الإلكتروني. كيف الأحوال؟ كان من الممتع حقاً أن أسمع عن الرياضات التي تحبها. أنا أحب كرة السلة، وألعب في فريق مرة واحدة في الأسبوع.

This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong, can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

نتحدث هذا الأسبوع كثيراً عن الحيوانات غير العادية في المدرسة. نظرنا إلى حيوانات من جميع أنحاء العالم وبعضها من مصر. الحيوان غير المعتاد المفضل لدي من مصر هو حيوان الأطوم، هل يمكنك رؤية الصورة؟ اعتقد أنه يتمتع بوجه حيوان ودود جميل وهو لطيف جداً لبقه هو بقرة البحر ويقضي ساعات طويلة في أكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.

What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal?

Write back and let me know.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Amir

وماذا عنك؟ ما هو الحيوان غير العادي المفضل لديك؟ اكتب وأعلمني.

أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريباً.

أمير

Help your child write an email about an unusual animal.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني عن حيوان غير عادي.

AL-BAHER Connect (5)

103



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 They are talking a lot about animals at school.
a) usual b) unusual c) famous d) unkind
- 2 Amir's favorite unusual animal is the
a) kangaroo b) penguin c) lion d) dugong
- 3 The nickname of the dugong is the sea
a) cow b) buffalo c) dog d) donkey
- 4 It eats grass from the every day.
a) land b) farm c) sea bed d) beach

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 My favorite from Egypt is the dugong.
a) bird b) animal c) thing d) item
- 2 The dugong's is sea cow.
a) surname b) name c) nickname d) full name
- 3 The dugong spends many hours eating grass from sea
a) bag b) bed c) chair d) table
- 4 Begin your email with "
a) Deer b) Dear c) Bye d) See you
- 5 End your email with "Write
a) soon b) noon c) phone d) late

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

أكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

sports - nickname - Egypt - face - dugong

We're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. My favorite unusual animal from 1) is the 2) It's got a lovely friendly 3) It's 4) is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1 favorite - your - What's - animal - unusual - ?

2 from - hear - to - I - you - hope - soon - .

3 for - your - Thanks - email - .

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇒ Mazen sent an email to hanin

⇒ what's your favorite animal

6 Write an email to your friend Mazen telling him about your favorite zoo animal. Your name is Hamza.

اكتب بريداً إلكترونياً.

- 1- Write about your favorite animal.
- 2- What the animal looks like.
- 3- Where it lives and what it eats.
- 4- Ask your friend about his opinion.

From :

To :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit (9)

Animals and birds

kangaroo	كنغر bat	خفاش penguin	عقر البطريق
panda	باتدا lion	أسد dolphin	دلفين
snail	حلزون parrot	ببغاء dugong	حيوان الأطوم

Trees

trunk	جذع / ساق	save	ينقذ	branch	فرع
nuts	مكسرات	shelter	ماوى	breeze	نسيم
rest	راحة	exhausted	متعب	useless	عديم الفائدة
ungrateful	جاحد / ناكر الجميل	comfortable	مريح	shade	ظل

Suffix (er)

teacher	معلم	climber	متسلق
footballer	لاعب كرة قدم	farmer	فلاح
reader	قارئ	traveler	مسافر

Phonics

Voiced sounds

vet	violin	west	wet
volcano	vest	whale	watermelon
vase	village	wheel	water

Language

- I can play tennis
- She could speak English.
- I'm very interested in history.
- History is so interesting.

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of about (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

"Your favorite animal"

My favorite animal is the lion. It's a very strong animal. It lives in the wild. It eats meat. It is the strongest animal. It can hunt its prey easily and quickly. It is wild and fierce. It's kept in iron cages so as not to harm anyone. It's the king of the forest. The lion has strong claws and sharp teeth which help it hunt its prey and eat it.

"A visit to the wildlife park"

Yesterday Ramez went to a wildlife park with his family. He enjoyed it very much. They saw lots of different animals like lions, kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the parrots. He was a bit sad because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a project on them at school.

"Trees"

Trees are the best gift of nature for us. They make the environment beautiful and clean. Water and sunlight are very important to help trees grow. Human beings get food from trees. They give us wood and shade. Houses, chairs and toys are made from wood that we get from trees. They produce oxygen. They give us fruits and flowers.

Dictation on Unit (9)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	كنغر		طائر البطريق
	دُب الهاندا		دولفين
	خفاش		حلزون
	غابة مطيرة		كس / جراب الكفغر

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	جذع		مكسرات
	فروع		عديم القائدة
	مأوى		حاحد / ناكر الجميل
	راحة		مرح
	مقرب		نسيم

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	حوت		عجلة
	ميلل		غريب
	طبيب بيطري		بركان
	قارئ		معلم
	مسافر		متسلق
	لاعب كرة قدم		فلاح

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	للب		غبر عادي
	حيوان الأطوم		غابة
	بفرة البحر		لح البحر

Activities on Unit (9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The dugong is a marine

- a) animal b) bird c) snake d) reptile

2 It lives all his life in

- a) sky b) land c) water d) ground

3 It eats from the sea bed.

- a) meat b) fish c) vegetables d) grass

Its nickname is the sea

- a) donkey b) cow c) bird d) dog

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1 The snails have hard and no legs.

- a) feet b) arms c) shells d) tails

The flies at night.

- a) kangaroos b) penguin c) panda d) bat

3 Mr Eissa is a great He is kind to his students.

- a) farmer b) traveler c) climber d) teacher

4 That movie was so

- a) bored b) interested c) boring d) tired

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

yellow - swim - black - bamboo - China

Dolphins are friendly. They 1) in a group with their families in the ocean. Pandas live in 2) They eat 3) They are 4) and white.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Every week I go to the park. I always go there on Fridays. My father usually drives me there. My mother and my two sisters often go with us. We always sit under a tree to protect us from the sun. We never leave the park dirty.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 I go to the park by
a) bus b) train c) plane d) car
- 2 I always go to the park on
a) Mondays b) Saturdays c) Fridays d) Sundays

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Who often go with you?
- 4 Where do you always sit?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 you - swim - Could - you - were - when - five ?
.....

- 2 us - give - Trees - and - shelter - shade - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 She could (playing) tennis.
- 2 History is so (interested).

7 Punctuate the following.

⇒ Mazen likes english and Arabic
.....

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding words: "A wildlife park"
(went - kangaroos - penguins)

1

Listen and choose the correct answer.

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Ramez went to a wildlife yesterday.
a) park b) restaurant c) rides d) school
2. He went with his
a) friends b) children c) family d) students
3. They saw lots of different
a) books b) animals c) clothes d) shoes



Listen and choose the correct answer.

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Last Wednesday I decided to travel
a) north b) south c) east d) west
2. I traveled in my
a) car b) boat c) bus d) train
3. I met some and they turned over my boat.
a) whales b) wheels c) boys d) men

2

Read and complete the dialogue with:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

sea bed - things - dugong - unusual

- Tamer : Hi! How are 1)?
- Amir : Fine. What's your favorite 2) animal?
- Tamer : My favorite unusual animal is the 3)?
- Amir : What does it eat?
- Nurse : It eats grass from the 4) every day.



Read and complete the dialogue with:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

wildlife - wonderful - animals - go

- Ramez : I had a 1) day out yesterday with my family.
- Ayman : Where did you 2)?
- Ramez : We went to the new 3) park.
- Ayman : What did you see?
- Nurse : We saw many 4) and birds.

Review (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 I had a day yesterday.
a) bad b) depressed c) unhappy d) lovely
- 2 I traveled to with my mom.
a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Luxor d) England
- 3 I went to Alexandria to see my
a) dad b) grandpa c) aunt d) uncle
- 4 We went by
a) bus b) plane c) boat d) train

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 She's very because she lost her homework.
a) unsafe b) unhappy c) unfriendly d) unkind
- 2 That electrical wire looks very, don't touch it.
a) uncomfortable b) unkind c) unhappy d) unsafe
- 3 A is someone who helps you in the classroom.
a) former b) footballer c) teacher d) climber
- 4 They had lunch at an Egyptian yesterday.
a) bank b) library c) school d) restaurant

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

fly - penguin - lion - swim - black

I like wild animals. My favorite animal is the 1)
It's 2) and white. It can 3) It can't 4)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I had a lovely day yesterday. I traveled to Alexandria with my mom to see my aunt. We went by train. I love trains.

When we arrived, we rushed straight to my aunt's house. She gave us a delicious lunch. After lunch, my aunt took us to the corniche. The sea was really beautiful.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 We traveled by
a) train b) bus c) plane d) bikes
- 2 My took us to the corniche.
a) uncle b) sister c) grandma d) aunt

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 When did you travel to Alexandria?
- 4 What did your aunt give you?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 did - What - to - use - they - build - homes - ?
.....

2 do - do - What - you - stay - healthy - to - ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 Do you (has) a cold?
- 2 He (can) walk when he was two years old.

7 Punctuate the following.

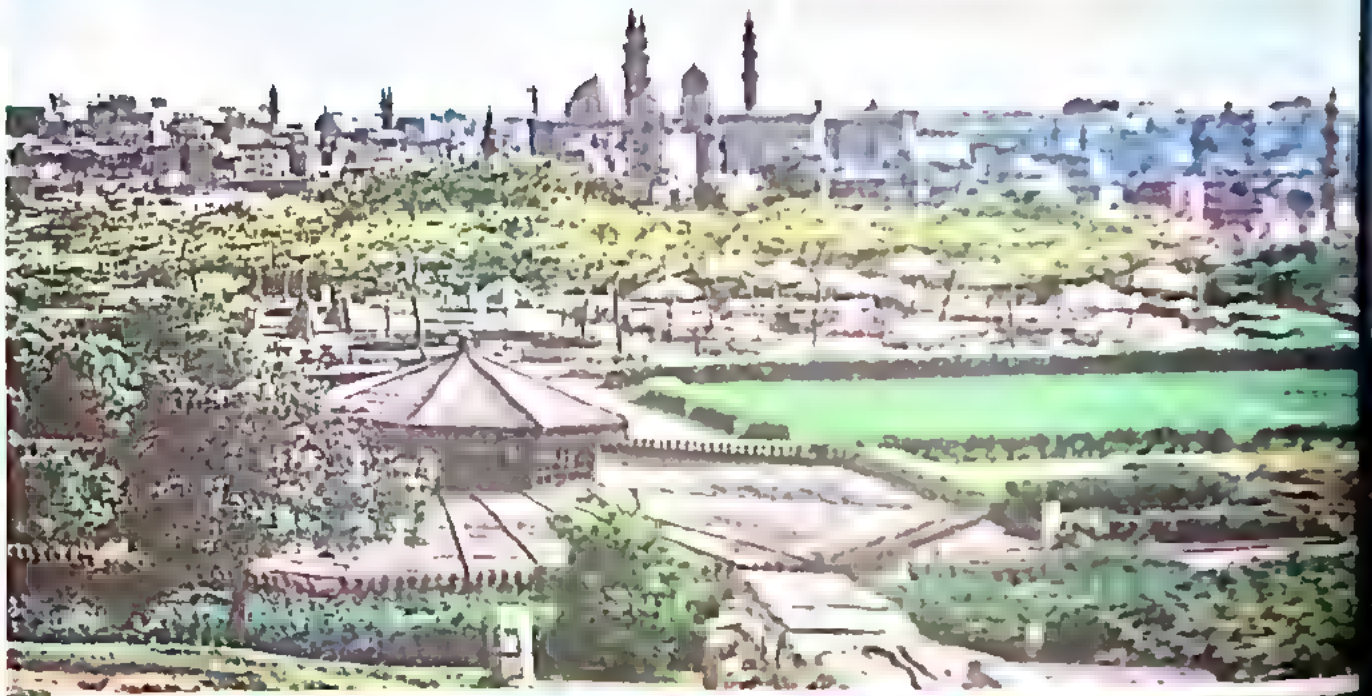
⇒ mazen could read and write when he was seven

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding words: "My perfect room"

(bedroom - share - desk - armchair - closet - posters)

Theme (4) Being responsible



Unit 10

Let's visit Egypt

هيا نزور مصر



In this unit's students will

- listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.
- practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something and give directions.
- practice using questions and short answers.
- read and say words with diphthongs
- estimate with mental math.
- write a paragraph about his town
- make a poster about his perfect town.

Lesson (1)

WE LOVE ALEXANDRIA!

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.

Places in the town

أماكن في المدينة



bank

بنك



factory

مصنع



monument

نصب تذكاري / أثر



library

مكتبة



shopping mall

مجمع تجاري (مول)



square

ميدان



station

محطة



museum

متحف



restaurant

مطعم



market

سوق



beach

شاطئ



hotel

فندق

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

roof garden	حديقة بالسطح	cuisine	مأكولات	tourists	سياح
culture	ثقافة	originally	في الأصل	mint	نعناع
traditional	تقليدي	mix	خليط / مزيج	England	انجلترا
ingredients	مكونات / مقادير	Barcelona	برشلونة	Germany	ألمانيا
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	fresh	طازج	Cairo	القاهرة
traditions	تقاليد / عادات	store	متجر	relaxing	مرح

Conjugation of verbs

نصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
own يمتلك	owned	think يعتقد	thought
chat ي دردش	chatted	buy يشتري	bought
serve يقدم	served	spend يقضي	spent
remind يذكر	reminded	swim يسبح	swam
borrow يستعير	borrowed		

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

on vacation	في إجازة	spend ages	يقضي فترات طويلة
reminds me of	تذكرك بـ	walk around	يتجول حول
find out about	يكشف (يعرف)	show... around	ياخذ... في جولة
all my life	طوال حياتي	by train	بالقطار
originally from	في الأصل من	move to	ينتقل إلى
at the market	في السوق	chat to	ي دردش مع
go on school trip	يلعب في رحلة مدرسية	work in	يعمل في
mix of	خليط من	buy from	يشترى من

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Who is from Alexandria?

Why we love Alexandria!

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit.

There's a lot to see and do here!

It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach!

We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think ...



من يحب الإسكندرية!

الإسكندرية مكان مثير جداً للزيارة. هناك الكثير لرؤيته وفعله. هناك مدينة كبيرة وبها الكثير من المتاحف والمتاحف الرائعة. وهناك شاطئاً
سألت بعض الأشخاص الذين يعيشون هناك والسياح عن رأيهم ..

Jana: I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

جونا: أنا أقيم في الإسكندرية من ألمانيا. أعتقد أن المكان هذا رائع جداً.

أعتقد أن هناك بعض المتاحف جيدة، لكنني لم أكن قد زرت أي منها بعد. أحب الجلوس في الحديقة على سطح الفندق في الإسكندرية وأشرب الشاي الأخضر وأتحدث مع الآخرين. إنه أمر مريح للغاية.

Hanan: I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

هانان: لقد عشت في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي. أنا أملك مطعم هنا، ويجب أن أقول إنك يجب عليك زيارة مطعمي لتجرب بعض المأكولات المحلية. نحن نقدم الطعام المصري التقليدي باستخدام مكونات محلية طازجة. لدينا سوبرماركتات رائعة، لكنني أفضّل شراء المكونات من السوق في المدينة القديمة.

Kira and Lena: We're from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there.

That's what we love most about Alexandria - the shopping malls! We spend ages walking around them. We like the people. They are so friendly!

كير و لين: نحن من مدينة صغيرة في إنجلترا. المتاجر ليست جيدة هناك. وهذا أكثر ما نحب في الإسكندرية - مراكز التسوق! نقضي ساعات طويلة في التجول حولهم. نحن نحب الناس. إنهم ودودون للغاية.

Kareem: I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach - there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in summer, so it's great to go there and swim.

كريم: أنا مصري، في الأصل من القاهرة. انتقلت إلى الإسكندرية العام الماضي وأحب المكان هنا. أنا أعمل في بنك. المكان المفضل لدى هو الشاطئ - حيث أنه لا يوجد شاطئ في القاهرة يمكن أن يكون الجو حاراً جداً هنا في الصيف، لذلك من الرائع الذهاب إلى هناك والسباحة فيه.

Paulo: I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home - a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old buildings.

Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions. The library is amazing!

بولو: أنا في إجازة هنا من برشلونة. أحب الإسكندرية لأنها تذكرني بموطني - إنها مدينة كبيرة وحديثة بالقرب من البحر. أحب المزيج بين المبنى الحديثة والتقليدية. أيضاً أحب التعرف على الثقافة والتقاليد. المكتبة رائعة!

Listen again. Circle the correct word.

- ① Jens likes drinking tea in the (museum - hotel).
- ② Hanan buys her ingredients from the (supermarket - market).
- ③ Kira and Lena like (shopping - swimming) in Alexandria.
- ④ Kareem lives in (Cairo - Alexandria).
- ⑤ Paulo likes Alexandria because it is like (Cairo - Barcelona).

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Sora : I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train.
سوف أذهب لزيارة عمي وعمتي. سوف أذهب بالقطار.

Ahmed : My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the pyramids.
سوف يزورنا ابن عمي. وسوف تأخذه في جولة. فهو لم يرى الأهرامات من قبل.

Dina : We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T-shirts and dresses.
ذهبنا في رحلة مدرسية لنكتشف كيف يتم تحويل القطن إلى ملابس مثل التيشيرتات والفساتين.

Youssef : I want to borrow some books.
أريد استعارة بعض الكتب.



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Alexandria is a really place to visit.
a) boring b) awful c) bad d) exciting
- 2 Alexandria is a city.
a) big b) tall c) small d) little
- 3 There's a lot to and do there.
a) put b) take c) see d) run
- 4 There's a in Alexandria.
a) peach b) beach c) tower d) temple

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 We have dinner at the
a) bank b) restaurant c) hospital d) museum
- 2 I go to the in summer and enjoy swimming.
a) beach b) museum c) library d) factory
- 3 We borrow books from the
a) mall b) bank c) park d) library
- 4 My dad works in a where cotton is turned into clothes.
a) station b) factory c) school d) post office
- 5 We catch the train at the
a) station b) factory c) library d) shopping mall
- 6 I like drinking sweet Egyptian tea.
a) salt b) mint c) hint d) faint
- 7 I'm Egyptian, from Cairo.
a) original b) originality c) originally d) originate

- 8 I'm vacation here from Barcelona.
a) in b) on c) at d) by

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

hotel - museums - coffee - mint - cool

I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think It's really

- 1) here. I think there are some good 2), but
I haven't been to any yet. I love sitting in the roof garden of my
3), drinking sweet Egyptian 4) tea.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hanan has lived in Alexandria all her life. She owns a restaurant here so she has to say that you must visit her restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. She serves traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. Alexandria has excellent supermarkets, but she prefers to buy her ingredients at the market in the old town.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 Hanan has lived in all her life.
a) Cairo b) Giza c) Alexandria d) Suez
2 You must visit her to try the local cuisine.
a) café b) restaurant c) club d) hotel

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Where does Hanan prefer to buy her ingredients?
.....

- 4 What does Hanan serve in her restaurant?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1 station - town - There's - my - a big - in - .

2 is - from - Who - Alexandria - ?

3 borrow - I - books - to - want - some - .

4 Alexandria - last - moved - We - year - to - .

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇒ there's also a library here

⇒ why we love Alexandria

7 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

"Alexandria"

Guiding words:

(exciting place - see and do - amazing - beach - restaurants - hotels)

Lesson (2)

DON'T RUN IN THE LIBRARY!



Vocabulary

المفردات

loudly	بصوت مرتفع	trash can	سلة مهملات	button	زر
inside	بالداخل	quietly	بهدوء	voice	صوت الإنسان
librarian	أمين / أمينة المكتبة	unimportant	غير هام	upstairs	الطابق العلوي
environment	البيئة	elevator	مصعد	avenue	طريق



Directions

الاتجاهات

Go straight!	سير بخط مستقيم!	Turn left!	انعطف يساراً!
Turn right!	انعطف يمينا!	Cross the road!	اعبر الطريق!



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
waste	يُضَيِّع	wasted	اختار chose
wait	ينتظر	waited	أحضّر brought
push	يدفع للأمام	pushed	فقد lost
return	يُعيد / يعود	returned	ارتدى wore
		lose	
		wear	



Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

go inside	يلهب للداخل	stand back	يرجع للخلف
Wait a moment.	انتظر لحظة.	jump up and down	يقفز لأعلى ولأسفل

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Unit (10)

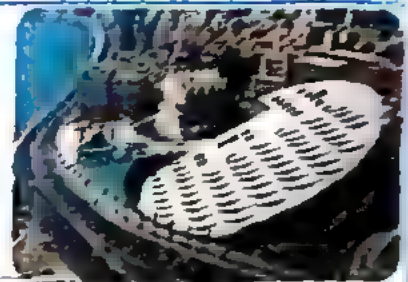
go in (into)	يدخل	return to	يعود إلى
go upstairs	يصعد لطابق العلوي	bring back	يُرجع
pick up	يأخذ	begin with	يبدأ
on the left	على اليسار	on the right	على اليمين

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Teacher : OK, children. We're here now.
This is The Alexandria Library.

حسنًا يا أطفال. نحن هنا الآن إنها مكتبة الإسكندرية.



Reem : Wow! It's amazing. Can we go inside?

واو! إنها رائعة. هل يمكننا الدخول؟

Teacher : Wait a moment. Is everybody here? Yes, OK. Let's go in.

انتظري دقيقة. هل الجميع هنا؟ نعم، حسنًا. هيا ندخل.

Ali : I'm going first!

سأدخل أولاً

Teacher : Don't run, Ali. Walk quietly. This is a very important place.

لا تجري يا علي. سر بهدوء. إنه مكان هام جدًا.

Ali : I'm sorry.

أسف

Noha : Can we go upstairs to the Children's Library?

هل يمكننا الصعود لمكتبة الأطفال؟

Teacher : Yes. Go into the elevator. Good. Stand back. The doors are closing. Don't jump up and down, Ali! Push the number one button, Tarek. Great, thank you. We're going up!

نعم. ادخلوا إلى المصعد. حسنًا. قفوا في الخلف. الأبواب تغلق. لا تقفز لأعلى وأسفل يا علي! اضغط على زر رقم 1 يا طارق. رائع، شكرًا لك. نحن نصعد.

Imperative صيغة الأمر

Usage: الاستخدام:

- We use imperatives to tell someone to do or not to do something.

- نستخدم صيغة الأمر لتخبر شخصاً ما أن يفعل أو لا يفعل شيء ما.

e.g. - Stand up.

- Don't run.

Form: التكوين:

- To make the affirmative imperatives use, the **"infinitive"** without **"to"**.

- لتكوين الأمر المثبت استخدم مصدر الفعل بدون "to".

باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل (inf.)

- e.g.
- Open the door, please.
 - Please, pick up that trash.
 - Put the cake in the oven, please.

- To make negative imperatives use, **"don't + infinitive"** without **"to"**.

- لتكوين الأمر المنفي استخدم (don't + المصدر) بدون "to".

Don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

- e.g.
- Don't eat in the library, please.
 - Don't waste your time.

Asking for directions سؤال عن الاتجاهات

- 1) Excuse me, how do I get to (place)? معلومة، كيف أصل إلى (.....)؟
- 2) Is there + (place) near here? هل هناك (.....) بالقرب من هنا؟
- 3) Where is the + (place), please? أين يوجد من فضلك؟

Note

For reply we use the imperative to give directions.

Giving directions إعطاء الاتجاهات

- 1) Go straight on مير بشكل مستقيم
- 2) Cross the road اعبّر الطريق
- 3) Turn right / left at the end of the road اتجه يمينًا / يسارًا في نهاية الطريق و.....
and the is on your right / left. يكون على يمينك / يسارك.
- 4) Go over مرّ على

Ask and answer.



How do I get to the museum from here.

كيف يمكنني الوصول من المتحف إلى هنا؟



Go straight, turn left at the end of the road and the museum is on your right.

سير بخط مستقيم، انعطف يسارًا في نهاية الطريق والمتحف على اليمين.



How do you get to school?

كيف تصل للمدرسة؟



I go straight on, turn right, and my school is on the left.

أسير بخط مستقيم، انعطف يمينًا، مدرستي على اليسار.



Excuse me, how do I get to the shopping mall?

معذرة، كيف يمكنني الوصول لمركز التسوق؟



Just cross the road. فقط اعبّر الطريق.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 open the door. It's hot.
a) Didn't b) Don't c) Doesn't d) Isn't
- 2 your room. It's dirty.
a) Clean b) Cleans c) Cleaned d) Cleaning
- 3 eat in the library.
a) Isn't b) Aren't c) Don't d) Can't
- 4 straight, turn left and the museum is on the right.
a) Goes b) Go c) Going d) Went
- 5 Don't up and down.
a) jumping b) jumped c) jump d) jumps
- 6 Don't late tomorrow.
a) is b) be c) are d) was
- 7 My school is the left.
a) in b) at c) on d) under

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 Don't (eating) in the library.
- 2 (Choosing) a good book to read.
- 3 (Keeps) the environment clean.
- 4 Don't (used) your cellphone here.
- 5 (Doesn't) write in the book.

3 Rewrite the rules with imperatives as the example.

اكتب كتاباً التي بصيغة الأمر.

- 1 You shouldn't talk loudly. Don't talk loudly.
- 2 You have to stand back.
- 3 You can't be late.
- 4 You shouldn't make noise.
- 5 You should listen to me carefully.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

place - beach - amazing - library - run

Last week we went to Alexandria. We visited the Alexandria
1) It's an 2) place. Our teacher asked us
not to 3) and walk quietly. This is a very important
4)

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 Always quiet when you are in your school library.

a) keep b) to keep c) keeps d) keeping

2 Faten, this exercise again, please.

a) do b) does c) did d) doing

3 Excuse me, how do I to the bus stop?

a) get b) take c) play d) run

3 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1 noise - Stop - and - making - to - me - listen - .

2 up - bus - Hurry - or - miss - you'll - the - .

3 write - book - Don't - the - in - .

4 to - school - How - get - do - you - ?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1 Don't (are) late tomorrow.

2 Don't (wastes) your time.

3 (Turning) right! Cross the road.

4 (Doesn't) talk loudly, please.

5 Punctuate the following.
ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇒ keep the environment clean

⇒ don't write short sentences

6 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.
اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

"What should or shouldn't you do inside a park?"

Guiding words:

(environment - park - flowers - help - trash can)

Lesson (3 / A)

GABI LEARNS A LESSON



Vocabulary

المفردات

ibis	طائر أبو منجل	jerboa	حيوان اليربوع	enormous	ضخم
sacks	أكياس	rudely	بوقاحة	land	ارض
creature	مخلوق	foolish	احمق	far	بعيد



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

way	طريق - طريقة	unkindly	بقسوة	traders	تجار
lost	مفقود - تاله	crowd	حشد - جمهور	clever	ذكي
sounds	أصوات	rude	وقح - فظ	snake	ثعبان
angry	غاضب	villager	فروي	beans	حبوب



Conjugation of verbs

نصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized	fly	يطير	flew
entertain	يُسلّي	entertained	begin	يبدأ	began
apologize	يعتذر	apologized	sleep	ينام	slept
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended	sell	يبيع	sold



Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

walk along	يمشي بطول	strange-looking	غريب الشكل
watch from	يراقب من	telling the truth	يقول الحقيقة

Listen and read.

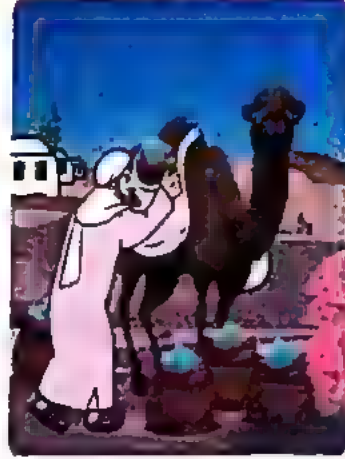
استمع واقرأ.

Gabi Learns A lesson

جابي يتعلم درسا

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans - I will take them to the market for you."

Gabi walked along the road. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't recognize the road.



في أحد الأيام، أراد أحد القرويين بيع حبيبه في السوق، لكنه لم يكن يستطيع المشي بمسافة بعيدة قال جملة جابي: «أعطني أكياس الحبوب - سوف أأخذها إلى السوق من أجلك.» سار جابي على طول الطريق. واتجه يساراً ثم يمينا ثم يساراً مرة أخرى وسرعان ما لم يتعرف جابي على الطريق.

Are you lost?" called an ibis. Gabi had never seen such a strange-looking bird.

"No, I'm not lost," pretended Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.

Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree.

"You look lost," said the snake.

"No, I'm not," said Gabi - again he wasn't telling the truth.

"Anyway, even if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs," he said unkindly. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds.

نادى عليه «أبو منجل»: «هل أنت تائه؟» لم يرى جابي مثل هذا الطائر الغريب من قبل. تظاهر جابي وقال: «لا، لست تائها. لم يكن جابي يعلم أن طائر أبو منجل يمكن أن يطير غالباً فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.

رأى جابي ثعباناً يراقبه من أغصان شجرة. قال الثعبان: «تبدو تائها.»

«قال جابي: «لا، لست كذلك.» مرة أخرى لم يكن يقول الحقيقة. قال بقسوة: «على أي حال، حتى لو كنت كذلك، لا يمكنك المساعدة -

أنت حتى ليس لديك أرجل.» لم يكن جابي يعرف أن الثعبان يذهب إلى السوق كل يوم لكي يسلي حشود الناس.

It began to get dark. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.

"What a funny-looking creature. Look at those enormous ears," he thought to himself.

"Hello," said the jerboa. "Do you need any help?"

"No, I don't!" replied Gabi rudely. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders.

"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.

Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was foolish and he was sorry.

He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and ask for their help the next day.

بنا الجو يظلم. رأى جابي حيوانًا صغيرًا على الطريق أمامه. فكر مع نفسه وقال: «يا له من مخلوق شكله مضحك. انظر إلى تلك الأذان الضخمة». قال اليربوع: «مرحبًا، هل تحتاج أي مساعدة؟» رد جابي بوقاحة: «لا، لا أحتاج!» لم يكن جابي يعرف أن اليربوع يمكن أن يسمع أصوات تجار السوق. قال اليربوع: «حسنًا، تصبح على خير إذن». عندما حل الظلام تمامًا وأدرك جابي أنه بحاجة إلى مساعدة لحيوانات. كان يعلم أنه كان أحمقًا وكان أسفًا. قرر أن ينام وأن يعتذر ويطلب مساعدتهم في اليوم التالي.

* Read the story again. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

fly - hear - help - snake

- 1 At the start, Gabi offered to the villager.
- 2 The ibis could help because he could over the land.
- 3 The could help because he went to the market every day.
- 4 The jerboa could help because he could very well.

Tip!

Some words have the same sounds but they are different in spelling and meaning.

بعض الكلمات لها نفس النطق ولكنها تختلف في المعنى والهجاء.

eight → ate right → write wear → were

Listen and Learn.

استمع وتعلم.

/əʊ/

/aɪ/

/ɔɪ/

/eɪ/

go يذهب	bite يعض	boy ولد	make يصنع
show يعرض	right صواب	toy لعبة	play يلعب
grow يزرع	write يكتب	enjoy يستمتع	cake كيك
wrote كتب	time وقت	point يشير	bake يخبز
below أسفل	bike دراجة	coin عملة	ache ألم

Study the following sentences.

- I have a bad toothache.
- Look! There are eight trees in the garden.
- Let's bake a cake for my birthday!
- Does the farmer grow vegetables?

Help your child learn about homophones.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم الكلمات المتماثلة صوتياً.

Lesson (3 / C)

CLIL: MATH

- An estimated answer isn't the actual answer. It's a good guess.

- الإجابة التقديرية ليست الإجابة الفعلية ولكنها تخمين جيد.

e.g. $12 + 17$ is about 30.

- To say estimated answer, we can use:

- لنقول الإجابة التقديرية نستخدم:

It's about ...

تقريباً / حوالي

It's near ...

تقريباً / حوالي

It's around ...

It's close to ...

They will be around 50
Egyptian pounds.

سوف يقدر ثمنهم حوالي ٥٠ جنية مصري.



How much will ten lemons and a kilo of grapes
be, please?

كم سوف يقدر ثمن ١٠ ثمار ليمون و ١ كيلو عنب، من فضلك؟

Circle the correct estimated answer.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| ① $34 + 47 =$ | (60 - 80 - 120) |
| ② $77 + 120 =$ | (80 - 130 - 200) |
| ③ $338 + 336 =$ | (480 - 680 - 980) |
| ④ $1050 + 50 + 104 =$ | (1000 - 1200 - 2000) |
| ⑤ $17 + 39 + 44 + 308 =$ | (300 - 400 - 500) |



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اسمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 A villager wanted to sell his in the market.
a) house b) pears c) beans d) tomatoes
- 2 The villager couldn't far.
a) walk b) run c) sleep d) drink
- 3 His took the sacks of beans.
a) donkey b) camel c) cow d) buffalo
- 4 The camel took the sacks of beans to the
a) bank b) school c) hospital d) market

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 At the start, Gabi offered to the villager.
a) play b) drink c) eat d) help
- 2 The ibis could help because he could over the land.
a) fly b) play c) hear d) watch
- 3 Ali should because he speaks rudely.
a) recognize b) hear c) apologize d) sleep
- 4 The man was foolish. He spoke
a) politely b) carefully c) slowly d) rudely

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

road - villager - camel - help - recognize

The villager wanted to sell his beans in the market. The

- 1) took the sacks of beans to the market. It walked
a long the 2) It didn't 3) the road. The
camel lost its way and refused to ask for 4)



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

At first, Gabi offered to help the villager by taking the sacks of beans to the market. He lost his way but he didn't want anyone to know that he was lost. The ibis could help him because he could fly over the land. The snake could help because he went to the market every day. At the end, he learnt that asking for help is good.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 Gabi offered to help the
 a) snake b) villager c) jerboa d) ibis
- 2 The ibis could over the land.
 a) hear b) smell c) taste d) fly

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Where did the snake go every day?
- 4 What lesson did Gabi learn?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للكوين جمل صحيحة.

- 1 farmer - vegetables - Does - grow - the - ?

 2 animal - first - did - Which - Gabi - meet - ?

 3 cake - birthday - Let's - for - make - a - my - .

6 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

"Going to the market and getting lost"

Guiding words:

(mom - asked - market - lost - didn't ask - sorry - learnt a lesson)

Lessons (4 & 5)

- WRITING - PROJECT



Vocabulary

المفردات

tourist attractions	المعالم السياحية	location	موقع
Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام	culture	ثقافة
The River Thames	نهر التايمز	history	تاريخ
Archaeological center	المركز الأثري	treasures	كنوز
The British Museum	المتحف البريطاني	New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة
International Park	المتنزه الدولي	waterpark	متنزه مائي



Conjugation of verbs

مضمرات الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
rain	تمطر rained	make	يُصنع / يجعل made
choose	يختار chose	find	يجد found



Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وشروط مترجمة

It doesn't matter.	لا يهم.	plenty of	كثير من
lots of fun things	كثير من الأشياء الممتعة	in the middle of	في وسط
from all over the world	من كل أنحاء العالم	Don't worry.	لا تقلق.

Tip!:

When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.

عندما نحاول إقناع أشخاص بالذهاب إلى مكان، نستخدم صفات إيجابية لوصف هذا المكان وفيما يلي بعض الصفات الإيجابية:

exciting	مثير beautiful	جميل delicious	لذيذ
famous	مشهور fascinating	ساحر / حلاب amazing	عجيب
relaxing	مريح perfect	كبير / مثالي wonderful	رائع

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions.



هذه واحدة من أكثر المدن إثارة في العالم. غالبًا ما تمطر هنا، ولكن لا يهم لأن هناك الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكنك القيام بها. يمكنك الذهاب في حافلة حمراء كبيرة وزيارة المعالم السياحية المذهلة.

You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

سترى أماكن مشهورة مثل قصر باكنجهام والمسارح والمتحف البريطاني. يمكنك القيام برحلة استرخاء بالقارب على نهر التايمز والسير أسفل الجسور الشهيرة. سيجعلك كل هذا التجول تشعر بالجوع! ولكن لا تقلق، فهناك كثير من المطاعم المختلفة للاختيار من بينها. يمكنك أن تجد طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم!

- To write a description of your own town or city to encourage people to visit it, write notes about the good things.

لن تكتب وصفًا لمدينتك الصغيرة أو الكبيرة لكي تشجع الناس على زيارتها، اكتب ملاحظات عن الأشياء الجيدة.

1- famous attractions

للمعالم السياحية المشهورة

2- location - is it near a beach/river?

الموقع - هل هي قريبة من شاطئ / نهر؟

3- history - culture - arts

التاريخ / الثقافة / الفنون

NEW ALAMEIN

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.



مدينة العلمين الجديدة

هناك العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التي يمكنك القيام بها في مدينة العلمين الجديدة. تقع المدينة على الشاطئ، لذلك يمكنك الذهاب إلى البحر عندما يكون الجو حارًا. وهذا الشاطئ الجميل طوله ١٤ كم! يوجد أيضًا بحيرة خضراء كبيرة تمامًا في وسط المدينة! يمكنك أيضًا زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة. إذا كنت ترغب في التعرف على التاريخ الرائع للمنطقة، فقم بزيارة المركز الأثري. توجد بعض الكنوز المدهشة هناك. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك في مدينة العلمين الجديدة.

Our perfect town

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes.

We can help to feed the animals.

It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in!

There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables.

There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade.

This is our perfect town!



مدينتنا المثالية

في مدينتنا المثالية، توجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجوار المدرسة مباشرة. يمكننا الذهاب إلى هناك بعد الظهر كل يوم بعد انتهاء الحصص. يمكننا المساعدة في إطعام الحيوانات.

الجو حار جدًا في مدينتنا، لذا توجد حديقة مائية مفتوحة دائمًا. الدخول مجاني! يوجد سوق رائع يبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة الشهية، مثل الخبز الطازج والفواكه والخضروات الطازجة.

توجد حديقة كبيرة بها الكثير من الأشجار. لذا يمكننا الذهاب إلى نزهات عائلية في الظل.

هذه مدينتنا المثالية!

Help your child read about a famous city.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مدينة مشهورة



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اسمعه وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 In our town, there is a big right next to the school.
a) club b) park c) zoo d) restaurant
- 2 We can go there every after classes.
a) morning b) evening c) night d) afternoon
- 3 We can help to feed the
a) children b) animals c) kids d) people
- 4 It's really in our town.
a) warm b) hot c) cold d) snowy

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 London is one of the most exciting in the world.
a) countries b) cities c) towns d) villages
- 2 In London you can visit amazing tourist
a) habitats b) attractions c) precipitation d) stations
- 3 Buckingham is a
a) zoo b) hospital c) palace d) museum
- 4 The city is on the so you can swim when it's hot.
a) beach b) desert c) park d) garden

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

fruit - park - ride - picnics - food

Our town is perfect. There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious 1), like fresh bread and fresh 2) and vegetables. There is a big 3) with lots of trees so we can go for family 4) in the shade.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The passage is about
 a) Alexandria b) Suez c) New Alamein d) Ismalia
- 2 The beach is kms long.
 a) 18 b) 14 c) 20 d) 40

3) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What can you visit when it's hot?
- 4 Where can you see amazing treasures?

5) Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للكوين جعل صحيحة.

- 1 are - treasures - There - amazing - some -

- 2 free - water park - The - is - in - to - go -

- 3 places - London - What - visit - can - in - you - ?

6) Write a paragraph of about (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

"My perfect town"

Guiding words:

(water park - zoo - markets - restaurants - shopping malls)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Review on Unit (10)

Places in a city

museum	متحف	bank	بنك	factory	مصنع
restaurant	مطعم	library	مكتبة	monument	أثر
market	سوق	square	ميدان	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
beach	شاطئ	station	محطة	park	مقبرة

Directions

Go straight!	سير بخط مستقيم!	Turn left!	انعطف يساراً!
Turn right!	انعطف يمناً!	Cross the road!	اعبر الطريق!

Phonics

/əʊ/	/eɪ/	/ɔɪ/	/aɪ/
show	eight	toy	right
go	make	boy	night
grow	bake	enjoy	write

Language

- Come here, Lama!
- Don't be late tomorrow.
- Go to the end of the street and turn right.

Math

- What's $88+90+27$?
- It's around 200.

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

"Alexandria"

Alexandria is a very beautiful city. It is on the sea. We go to the beach when it is hot. We swim in the sea. We play on the beach. It has interesting places to visit. You can visit the library and many other places.

"London"

London is an exciting city. There are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames. You can find delicious food from all over the world there. London is full of history.

"New Alamein"

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of area, then visit the Archaeological Center.

Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب الفقرات.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

143



Dictation on Unit (10)

Lesson 11

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	متحف		بنك
	نمناح		شاطى
	ماكولات		نصبا تذكارى
	سوق		محطة
	مكتبة		مصنع

Lesson 12

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	زد		ملة مهملات
	أمين المكتبة		يلتوء
	بيئة		بالنخل

Lesson 13

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	ضخم		طار أبو منجل
	أحصى		حيوان البريوع
	بوفاحة		أكياس

Lesson 14

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	المعالم السياحية		متى
	مستريح / مريح		متن ماى
	لليلة		كنول
	موقع		جميل
	ثقالة		تويخ

Activities on Unit (10)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 There are many things to do in New Alamein.
a) boring b) awful c) bad d) exciting
- 2 The city is on the
a) restaurant b) park c) beach d) peach
- 3 The beautiful beach is kms long
a) 14 b) 4 c) 40 d) 44
- 4 There is also a lake right in the middle of the city.
a) white b) green c) black d) yellow

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 My uncle works in a big food in Tanta.
a) school b) Museum c) Park d) factory
- 2 My grandfather usually tells us funny stories to us.
a) entertain b) laugh c) keep d) buy
- 3 Heba likes to drink tea with
a) salt b) mint c) pepper d) apples
- 4 We go to the to read books.
a) library b) museum c) hospital d) market

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Nile - tourist - trip - museum - Palace

I had a wonderful holiday. I went to London. It has lots of
1) attractions. I visited the British 2) and
Buckingham 3) I took a boat 4) on the River Thames.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Luxor is a wonderful city. I went there last winter. The weather there is hot in winter. The city is full of history. You can see and visit many temples there. This beautiful city is in Upper Egypt. It has wonderful hotels. They serve delicious food there. I visited the Valley of the Kings and Queens. I took a boat trip on the Nile. I had a wonderful time there.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 Luxor is a city.
a) wonderful b) bad c) boring d) ugly
- 2 The city is full of
a) geography b) history c) science d) math

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Where is Luxor?
- 4 What did you take on the Nile?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- 1 museum - the - get - How - to - I - do - here - from - ?
.....
- 2 is - school - to - There - the - a big - next - zoo - .
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 Don't (closes) the window.
- 2 Please, (picking) up that trash.

7 Punctuate the following.

⇒ kareem lives in Cairo

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

"Giza"

Guiding words:

(wonderful - city - the Pyramids - the Sphinx
- the Nile - farms and fields)

1

Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Alexandria is a really place to visit.
a) excited b) exciting c) awful d) bad
- Alexandria is a city.
a) small b) long c) little d) big
- There are lots of restaurants, stores and museums in Alexandria.
a) excited b) bad c) amazing d) less

2

Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- In our perfect town, there is a big
a) class b) zoo c) hospital d) restaurant
- The zoo is to the school.
a) on b) in front c) next d) behind
- We can go there every after classes.
a) morning b) evening c) afternoon d) day

2

Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

on - get - right - straight

- Amany : Excuse me, how do I 1) to the bus stop?
Woman : Go 2) ahead onto North Road, then turn
3) onto the main street. It's 4) the left.

2

Read and complete the dialogue with: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بـ:

amazing - go - jump - Library

- Teacher : OK children. This is the Alexandria 1)
Reem : Wow! It's 2) Can we go inside?
Teacher : Yes, OK. Let's 3) in.
Reem : Can we go upstairs to the children's library?
Teacher : Yes. Don't 4) up and down.

Unit 11

Vacations

الإجازات

In this unit students will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about vacations.
- think about environmental responsibility.
- practice using prepositions of time.
- listen to a conversation.
- learn about different types of triangles.
- read and say words with the /th/ sound.
- think about their perfect vacation.
- write a diary entry for their best day on vacation.
- make a poster for a vacation destination.

Lesson (1)

A WORLD TRIP

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



suitcase

حقيرة سفر



swimming pool

حمام سباحة



passport

جواز سفر



hotel

فندق



ticket

تذكرة



tourist

سائح



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

footprints

آثار أقدام

museum

متحف

India

الهند

husband

زوج

airport

مطار

daughter

ابنة

hotel room

غرفة فندقية

aloud

بصوت عالي

huge

ضخم

theme park

ملاهي

Japan

دولة اليابان

island

جزيرة

destination

وجهة السفر

floor

طابق

bay

خليج

luckily

لحسن الحظ

flight

رحلة طيران

degree

درجة "ملوية"

business trip

رحلة عمل

Singapore

سنغافورة

high-rise

ارتفاع عالي

vacation

إجازة

camera

كاميرا

boat trip

رحلة بالقارب



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs فعل منتظم

Present	Past
receive <small>يستقبل</small>	received
pack <small>يحزم أمتعة</small>	packed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
forget <small>ينسى</small>	forgot
send <small>يرسل</small>	sent



Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وأحرف جر هامة

on the roof of	على سطح	receive... from....	يتلقى ... من
travel around	يسافر حول	on vacation	في العطلة
The Gardens by the bay	حدائق بجوار الخليج	get through	تمر من خلال
on a business trip	في رحلة عمل	busy city	مدينة مزدحمة
fly from	بطين من	take photos	يلتقط صورًا



Definitions

التعريفات

Passport	you need this to travel to a different country
beach	you can make a sandcastle and swim in the sea here
hotel	this is somewhere to stay when you are on vacation
theme park	you can have fun here and go on different rides
suitcase	you put your clothes and other things in this when you travel

Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.

Things you take on vacation

أشياء تأخذها في العطلة

ticket	camera
passport	suitcase
sunglasses	phone

Places you go on vacation

أماكن تذهب إليها في العطلة

theme park	city
hotel	museum
swimming pool	beach

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Where are Uncle Hany and Aunt Nadia now?

Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hany. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hany were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.



تلقت أمي اليوم رسالة بريد إلكتروني من أختها نادية وزوجها هاني. إنهما في رحلة عمل وهما مسافران حول العالم. كانت نادية وهاني في الهند الأسبوع الماضي، وهذا الأسبوع هم في سنغافورة. تقرأ أمي الرسالة بصوت عالٍ لابنتها رنا وابنها علي.

From: Nadiax@mail.com
Subject: Mytrip

To: Samiax@mail.com

Dear Samia,

Hello to you all from Singapore! It's hot here - about 36 degrees. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable and we both slept. I didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived - we got our suitcases straight away.

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again!

Love,
Nadia

عزيزتي سامية،

سلامي لكم جميعاً من سنغافورة العواجز هنا حوالي 36 درجة. لحسن الحظ لدينا غرفة فندق جميلة. نحن في الطابق 42. المنظر جميل وبمكتنا رؤية الشاطئ. يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق! هل يمكنك تصديق ذلك؟ استغرقت الرحلة الجوية من الهند حوالي 6 ساعات، ولكنها كانت مريحة وكلاً منا قد نام. لم نستغرق وقتاً طويلاً للخروج من المطار عندما وصلنا! إننا حققنا على الفور.

سنغافورة مدينة رائعة. هناك الكثير من السفى الشاطيء، ولكن هناك أيضاً العديد من المتنزهات والحدائق والأشجار للجلوس تحتها والاسترخاء أيضاً. تعتبر الحدائق بحوار الضيق مكاناً سهراً جداً حيث توجد فيه زهور ونقش من جميع أنحاء العالم. لقد قضينا الكثير من الوقت هناك. أنت تتنسى حقاً أنك في وسط مدينة مزدحمة.

بالأمس، ذهبنا في رحلة للقارب مع بعض السياح الآخرين إلى إحدى الجزر. يوجد ملاهي. كل الأمر متفاجئاً! بعد ذلك، زورنا متحف الأيمن كريم! تناولت ليس كريم الملكة الشيلة وتكون من الفيليا والصل مع الشوكولاتة. كان رائعاً!

أتمنى أن تكونوا جميعاً بخير. نسمة سوف نغادر إلى اليابان غداً وسأرسل لكم بريداً إلكترونياً بعد عندما نصل. والآن يجب أن أجد تذاكرنا وجوازات سفرنا ولن أهرم حقناً مرة أخرى.

حب
نسمة



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct word from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Mom received an email from her Nadia.
a) grandma b) aunt c) sister d) daughter
- 2 Nadia and Hany are on a trip.
a) business b) healing c) tourist d) weekend
- 3 Nadia and Hany were in last week.
a) Egypt b) India c) China d) France
- 4 This week they are in
a) Paris b) London c) Cairo d) Singapore

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 I can't travel abroad without my
a) umbrella b) passport c) book d) magazine
- 2 I have to pack my
a) passports b) pools c) tickets d) suitcases
- 3 We can swim in the swimming
a) ball b) pool c) pole d) pill
- 4 There are and plants in the garden.
a) water b) flowers c) hotels d) tickets
- 5 Tourists always stay in
a) banks b) parks c) hotels d) beaches
- 6 In Singapore there are a lot of buildings.
a) small b) tiny c) short d) high-rise
- 7 are things you take on vacation.
a) Museums b) Cameras c) Hotels d) Beaches
- 8 I received an email my son Omar.
a) at b) by c) from d) for
- 9 My parents are a business trip.
a) at b) on c) in d) by

Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The underlined word "high-rise" means very

- a) short b) small c) big d) tall

Singapore is a wonderful

- a) country b) town c) village d) city

the following questions.

Where do the flowers and plants come from?

Where can you sit to relax in Singapore?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للكوين جعل صحيحة.

is - swimming pool - There - on - a huge - the roof - .

you - What - do - vacation - on - take - ?

on - We - last - Friday - went - a boat trip - .

Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding questions:

Your vacation

When is your vacation?

Where are you going on vacation?

What are you going to take on vacation?

Your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2 / A)

A SPECIAL TRIP



Main Vocabulary

كلمات رئيسية

traditional	تقليدي	day trip	رحلة نهارية
stalls	أكشاك	handicrafts	أعمال يدوية
destination	وجهة مقصودة	diary	مذكرة / مفكرة



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

complete	يكمل / كامل	Jordanian	أردني	chance	فرصة
crafts	جرف	quite	إلى حد ما	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
colorful	ملون	trading center	مركز التجارة		



Famous countries and places

دول وأماكن مشهورة

Memphis restaurant	مطاعم ممفيس	the Dead Sea	البحر الميت
Roman Amphitheater	المدراج الروماني	As-Salt	السلط (مدينة في الأردن)
Abu Jaber Museum	متحف أبو جابر	Zambia	نولة زامبيا
Archaeological Museum	المتحف الأثري	Amman Citadel	قلعة عمان



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

arrive	يصل	arrived
check	يسجل / يفحص	checked
discover	يكشف	discovered
wander	يتجول	wandered

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

find	يجد	found
buy	يشترى	bought
spend	يقضي	spent
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

a late lunch	بعد الغداء المتأخر	check in	يسجل دخول
head out of	يخرج من	float on	يطفو على
drive back to	يقود عائداً إلى	chance to	فرصة
reach destination	يصل للمكان المقصود	good for	جيد / مفيد
walk through	يمشي عبر	write down	يكتب - يدون
was born	ولد	on the way for	على الطريق
wander through streets	يتجول في الشوارع	arrive in / at	يصل إلى
not long now	لم يتبقى وقتاً طويلاً	go shopping	يلهب للتسوق

Definitions

التعريفات

diary is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day.

diary entry is a piece of writing in a diary.

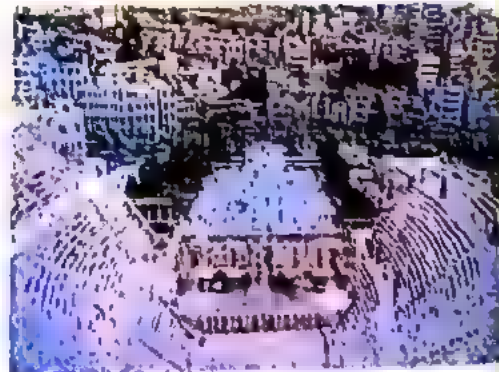
and read the leaflet.

استمع واقرأ النشرة

How many museums can you visit on this trip?

BEST TOURS TRIP TO JORDAN October 4-8

: Arrive in Amman and check in to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Amphis restaurant for traditional Jordanian dinner in the evening.



اليوم الأول: الوصول إلى عمان والتسجيل في فندقنا في وسط المدينة. استمتع ببعض وقت الفراغ في المدينة قبل الالتقاء في مطعم ممفيس لتناول عشاء أردني تقليدي في المساء.

Your child listen and read

ساعد طفلك

AL-BAHER - Connect (5) 155

Day 2: Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel before exploring the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets.

اليوم الثاني: نستمع اليوم بجولة في عمان ونزور قلعة عمان الشهيرة قبل استكشاف المسرح الروماني والمخرج والمتحف الأردني بعد تناول وجبة غداء في وقت متأخر في مطعم محلي، وقضينا فترة ما بعد الظهر والمساء في التجول في أسواق عمان العديدة الملونة.

Day 3: Today we head out of the city for a day trip to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the history of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center.

اليوم الثالث: اليوم اتجهنا خارج المدينة في رحلة نهائية إلى السلط. على بعد حوالي ساعة من عمان، في بلدة السلط القديمة ستجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية. الأسواق رائعة وهناك العديد من الفنون والحرف اليدوية للشراء ستزور متحف أبو جابر وتكتشف تاريخ السلط كمركز تجاري هام في الأردن.

Day 4: No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin.



اليوم الرابع: لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون رحلة إلى البحر الميت. هناك الكثير جدًا من الملح في هذا البحر حتى أنه يمكنك أن تطفو على الماء! يمكنك أيضًا الاستمتاع بطين البحر الميت، وهو مفيد جدًا لبشرتك.

Day 5: After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport at 5 pm.

اليوم الخامس: بعد الاستمتاع بوجبة فطور مريحة، سنغادر الساعة 11 صباحًا لنعود إلى عمان في رحلة تستغرق ثلاث ساعات. سنوقف في الطريق لتناول الغداء قبل الوصول إلى المطار الساعة 5 مساءً.

and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Nahla's diary entry

Thursday, October 6th

Dear Diary,

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with history. I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through the streets and several people bought additional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. I bought a lovely colorful rug. Saleh (our tour guide) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

الخميس، ٦ أكتوبر

مذكرتي المفضلة،

اليوم كان أفضل يوم على الإطلاق! أنا أحب أي شيء له علاقة بالتاريخ. وأذهب دائما إلى المتحف في بلدي، لذلك كان اليوم يوما مميزا بالنسبة لي. لم تكن رحلة الحافلة سيئة للغاية. استغرق الأمر ساعة واحدة فقط للوصول إلى وجهتنا. استمعت إلى الموسيقى في الطريق ومر الوقت سريعًا. عندما وصلنا، أتاحت لنا الفرصة للتجول في الشوارع واشتري العديد من الناس المصنوعات اليدوية الأردنية التقليدية من الأكشاك واشترت سجادة ملونة جميلة. كان صالِح (مرشدنا السياحي) لطيفًا جدًا وأخذها إلى الحافلة من أجلي حتى لا اضطر إلى حملها! كان ذلك به حسن الحظ لأنني قضيت ساعات في المتحف!

Read again the text, then answer.

Which day is she describing?

How long did it take to reach their destination?

What did Nahla buy?

your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

Lesson
(2 / B)

LANGUAGE FOCUS



Vocabulary

المفردات

lunchtime	وقت الغداء	go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	dentist	طبيب أسنان
Shall we...?	هل يمكننا...؟	appointment	موعد	flight	رحلة جوية
remind	يُذكر	go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	basketball	كرة السلة

Listen and read

استمع واقرأ.

Narrator : 1

Boy 1 : Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday?
مرحبًا أيمن، هل ترغب في لعب كرة السلة بعد المدرسة يوم الخميس؟

Ayman : On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.
يوم الخميس؟ آسف، لا أستطيع، أنا أذهب للسباحة أيام الخميس.

Narrator : 2

Girl 1 : Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend?
مرحبًا أميرة، هل سنذهب للتسوق في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟

Amira : Yes please, that sounds good!
نعم من فضلك، هذا يبدو جيدًا!

Narrator : 3

Dad : Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon.
فريد، تذكر أن عندك موعد مع طبيب الأسنان بعد الظهر.

Fareed : Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it?
أوه، نعم، إنه في الساعة الخامسة، أليس كذلك؟

Dad : Yes, that's right.
نعم، هذا صحيح.

Fareed : OK, thanks Dad.
تمام، شكرًا يا أبي.

Narrator : 4

Mom : Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am.

تاليا، ستغادر رحلتنا الجوية الساعة ١١ صباحاً.

Talia : Ok Mom, I'll be ready.

حسناً يا أمي، سأكون جاهزة.

Narrator : 5

Sherif : Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning.

أمي، تذكرني أنني سألعب كرة القدم مع رامي في الصباح.

Mom : Oh, yes, that's fine Sherif. Thanks for reminding me.

نعم، هذا جيد يا شريف، شكراً للتذكير.

Narrator : 6

Sara : Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa?

أمي، متى سنزور الجد والجدة؟

Mom : We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.

سنذهب في شهر يوليو، يا سارة. لم يتبقى وقت طويل الآن.

Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

Dad is a baker. He works the mornings.

a) in b) on c) at d) under

We go to the club Saturday.

a) in b) on c) above d) at

Does our next class start 2 pm?

a) at b) in c) of d) on

Grandma was born 1962.

a) in b) on c) at d) under

Your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك في القراءة.

Prepositions of Time

حروف جر الزمان

in

on

at

in

months

شهور

seasons

فصول السنة

years

سنين

in

the morning

صباحاً

the afternoon

بعد الظهر

the evening

مساءً

e.g. Grandma was born **in** 1962. - I go to Alex **in** summer.

e.g. It was warm **in** October. - He is active **in** the morning.

e.g. They arrived **in** the morning.

on

days of the week

أيام الأسبوع

On Saturday.

special days

أيام مخصوصة

On my birthday.

specific dates

تواريخ محددة

On June 26th.

e.g. I go swimming **on** Mondays.

e.g. I am having a party **on** my birthday.

e.g. I was born **on** July 6th 2010.

at

times

الوقت (ساعة)

night

ليلاً

lunchtime

وقت الغداء

e.g. Our flight lands **at** 8 pm.

e.g. I go to bed **at** night.

e.g. We play basketball **at** lunchtime.



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct word from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the
a) Dead Sea b) Ocean c) Lake d) Red Sea
- 2 There is much in this sea.
a) fish b) sugar c) tea d) salt
- 3 You are able to on the water of this sea because of the much salt.
a) sink b) dive c) float d) swim
- 4 You can enjoy the Dead Sea, which is very good for your skin.
a) plants b) water c) fish d) mud

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

bad - history - museum - park - destination

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with

1) - I always go to the 2) at home, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too 3) It only took an hour to reach our 4)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Today we head out of the city for a day trip to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman. In the ancient town of As-Salt, you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the history of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The opposite of the underlined word "ancient" is
a) good b) bad c) modern d) old

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5) 161

- 2 As-Salt is about a/an away from Amman.
a) hour b) day c) month d) year

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What will you find in the markets?.....
4 What will you discover there?.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

- 1 you - like - What - visit - country - would - to - ?
.....

- 2 would - I - like - to - Zambia - visit - .
.....

- 3 go - We - to - club - the - Saturdays - on - .
.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 Dad is a baker. He works (on) the morning.
2 We go to the club (at) Saturdays.
3 Grandma was born (on) 1962.
4 Does our next class start (in) 2 pm?

6 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

A trip to Jordan

Guiding words: .

(best - special day - bus - wander - bought - handicrafts -
tour guide - museum)

Lesson (3 / A)

AI-AZHAR PARK



Vocabulary

المفردات

vacation	إجازة	picnic	نزهة	awesome	ملهش / رائع
ill	مريض	a show	عرض	summer	فصل الصيف
Al-Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	bench	مقعد	group	مجموعة
job	وظيفة	meal	وجبة	fantastic	رائع
playground	ملعب	possible	ممکن	away	بعيداً



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة

Present	Past
shout	يصرخ shouted
agree	يوافق agreed
phone	يتصل phoned
stay	يقيم stayed
seem	يبدو seemed

Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
go	يذهب went
sit	يجلس sat
feel	يشعر felt
think	يعتقد thought
come	يأتي came



Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

school was over	انتهت الدراسة	at the beach	عند الشاطئ
at the end of...	في نهاية...	a group of...	مجموعة من...
run past	يجري مازجا	agree to	يوافق على
feel better	يلحسن	go on vacation	يلعب في إجازة
stay at	يمكث في	have a meal	يتناول وجبة
feel a bit low	يشعر بمزاج سيئ	make a picnic	يعد وجبة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read

استمع واقرأ.

Why did Seleem feel better at the end of the story?

Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually



went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible - Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.

كان سليم يشعر بالحزن. كان صيفًا حارًا، وانتهت الدراسة وأراد سليم أن يذهب في إجازة. فكان ابن عمه شريف علي الشاطئ وأراد سليم أن يكون هناك أيضًا. عادة ما كانت عائلته تذهب في إجازة مع عائلة شريف، لكن هذا العام لم يكن ذلك ممكنًا - والد سليم حظى بوظيفة جديدة واضطروا للبقاء في القاهرة.

Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?", "I'm feeling a bit low - I want to be at the beach," said Seleem.

"Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park."

"Hmm," said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it sounds interesting!"

اتصل به صديقه مروان قائلاً: "مرحبًا، كيف حالك يا سليم؟" قال سليم: "أشعر بمزاج سيء قليلًا. أريد أن أكون على الشاطئ." قال مروان: "حسنًا، هذا العام لا يمكنك الذهاب إليه، لذا دعنا نجد شيئًا آخر لنفعله! أنا أعرف، هيا نذهب إلى حديقة الأزهر." قال سليم: "همم. لا أعرف، ولكن يبدو ذلك مثيرًا للاهتمام!"

Seleem's mom agreed to take them to the park. She made a picnic, so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past.

وافقت والدته سليم أن تأخذهم إلى الحديقة، قامت بإعداد وجبة، لذا عندما وصلوا، جلسوا تحت شجرة كبيرة على العشب الأخضر الجميل واستمتعوا بطعامهم. كان يوماً جميلاً، ولعب مروان وسليم كرة القدم. وفجأة جاء رامي ومaged، أصدقائهما من المدرسة، واكضين.

"Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I thought you were at the beach!"

صاح سليم: "مرحباً رامي!" لماذا أنت في المدينة؟ اعتقدت أنك كنت عند الشاطئ!"

"No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went together to the playground. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.

قال رامي: "لا جديتي مريضة لذا أرادت أمي البقاء في القاهرة. هناك مجموعة كاملة منا بقيت في البيت ولم تسافر. هل يمكنك أن تأتي إلى الملعب معنا؟" استأذن سليم من أمه وذهبوا جميعاً معاً إلى الملعب. جلست الأم على مقعد واستمتعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة في الحديقة.

"I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon. "I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back with Dad, see the show, and have a meal at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy - now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed that summer in the city would be **awesome!**

قالت أمي في نهاية فترة ما بعد الظهر: "أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع. أستطيع أن أرى أن هناك عرضاً الأسبوع المقبل. دعنا نعود مع أبينا ونرى العرض، ونتناول وجبة في المطعم. شعر سليم بسعادة كبيرة. الآن عرف أن أصدقائه في المدينة وبها حديقة رائعة. يبدو أن الصيف في المدينة سيكون رائعاً.

Lesson
(3 / B)

PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد.

(th) /θ/



mouth

فم



south

جنوب



birthday

يوم ميلاد



Earth

كوكب الأرض

➔ To make the /θ/ sound, press your tongue against your top teeth.

لنطق الصوت /θ/ نضغط باللسان على الأسنان العليا.

➔ It is unvoiced, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it.

وهو صوت غير جهري، وهذا يعني أنه يجب الشعور بهواء في اليد عند نطقه.

(th) /ð/



mother

الأم



father

الأب



leather

جلد



clothes

ملابس

➔ To make the /ð/ sound, press your tongue against your top teeth.

لنطق الصوت /ð/ نضغط باللسان على الأسنان العليا.

➔ There's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.

لا تخرج في لطفه هواء ولكن تشعر بهتزاز في الرقبة.



Study the following

th /θ/	th /ð/	
thing	this	هذا (المفرد القريب)
think	these	هؤلاء (الجميع القريب)
author	those	أولئك (الجميع البعيد)
Earth	with	مع
thousand	other	أخرى / آخر
three	they	هم

➔ Add these words to the correct column. أضف الكلمات إلى العمود الصحيح.
(mouth - other - bathroom - Earth - father - with)

/θ/	/ð/

Suffix اللاحقة

➔ Suffix is a letter or group of letters added to the end of a word to make another word.

اللاحقة هي حرف أو مجموعة حروف تضاف إلى نهاية كلمة لتكون كلمة أخرى.

	dangerous	خطير		creative	مبدع
-ous	famous	مشهور	-ive	expensive	غالي الثمن
	enormous	طبخم		active	نشط

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

- Be careful! That snake is poisonous. (سام).
- Ali swims and runs. He's very active.
- Everyone knows Soha. She is very famous.
- His watch is very expensive.

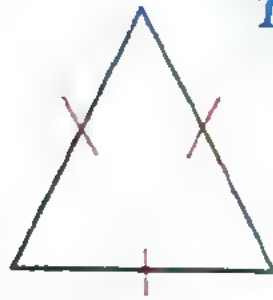
Help your child recognize the adjective suffixes.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على لاحقات تكون صفات.

A triangle: is a 2D shape with three sides.

المثلث: هو شكل ثنائي الأبعاد بثلاث أضلاع.

Triangles المثلثات



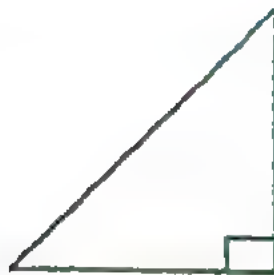
An equilateral triangle

مثلث متساوي الأضلاع



An isosceles triangle

مثلث متساوي الساقين



A right angle triangle

مثلث قائم الزاوية

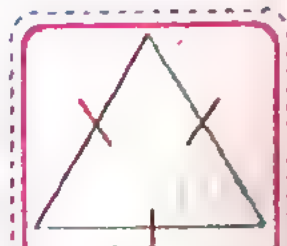


A scalene triangle

مثلث مختلف الأضلاع

An equilateral triangle: has three equal sides.

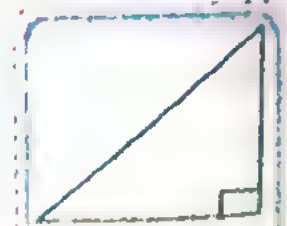
المثلث متساوي الأضلاع: له 3 أضلاع متساوية



An equilateral

A right angle triangle: has one angle that measures (90°) .

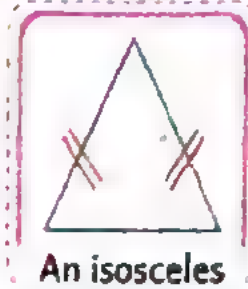
المثلث قائم الزاوية: به زاوية قياسها (90°) .



A right angle

An isosceles triangle: has two sides of equal length.

المثلث متساوي الساقين: به ضلعان متساويان في الطول.



A scalene triangle: has three sides of different length.

المثلث مختلف الأضلاع: به ٣ أضلاع مختلفة الطول.



1 Read and number.

اقرأ ورتب.

1 An equilateral has three equal sides.



2 A right angle has one angle that measures (90°) .

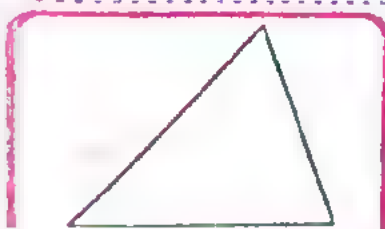


3 An isosceles has two sides of equal length.

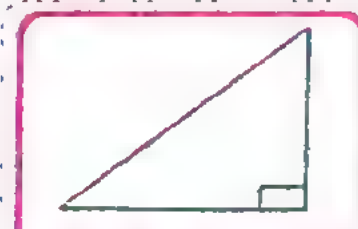
4 A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.

2 Circle the correct triangle type.

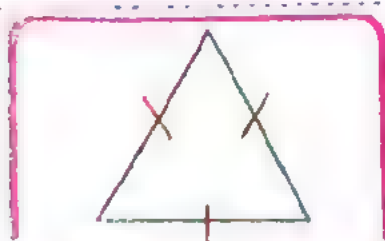
حيط لوضع المثلث الصحيح.



(scalene - right angle)



(isosceles - right angle)



(equilateral - scalene)



(scalene - isosceles)

Help your child learn about different types of triangles.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أنواع المثلثات المختلفة.



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct word from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Seleem was feeling
a) happy b) kind c) sad d) delighted
- 2 It was a summer.
a) cold b) warm c) rainy d) hot
- 3 His cousin Sherif was away at the
a) beach b) park c) restaurant d) zoo
- 4 Seleem's dad had a new and they had to stay in Cairo.
a) car b) house c) job d) friend

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Mom sat on a in the park.
a) oven b) bench c) bed d) closet
- 1 School is over and I wanted to go vacation.
a) on b) at c) in d) by
- 3 An isosceles triangle has two sides of length.
a) different b) equal c) simple d) easy
- 4 Everyone knows Soha, she is
a) expensive b) famous c) active d) unknown

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

snowy - hot - beach - vacation - job

Seleem was feeling sad. It was a 1) summer, school was over and he wanted to go on 2) He wanted to go to the 3) with his cousin Sherif but Seleem's dad had a new 4) and they had to stay in Cairo. He goes to Al-Azhar Park.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Seleem was feeling sad. He wanted to go on vacation. But Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo. His friend Marwan suggested going to Al-Azhar Park. Seleem's mother took them to the park. She made a picnic. They sat under the tree and had their food.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 Seleem was feeling
a) happy b) sad c) delighted d) pleased
- 2 They had their food under the
a) bed b) bus c) grass d) tree

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Who had a new job?
- 4 Where did Marwan suggest going to?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للكوين جمل صحيحة.

- 1 are - you - Why - the - in - city - ?
.....
- 2 watch - His - expensive - is - very - .
.....
- 3 has - An equilateral - equal - three - sides - triangle - .
.....

6 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Al-Azhar Park

Guiding words:

(place - vacation - fantastic - picnic - football - plants - birds -
awesome - Cairo)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (4 & 5)

-Writing - Project



Main Vocabulary

كلمات رئيسية

sights

مشاهد

snorkeling

رياضة الغطس

beach buggies

عربات الشاطئ

race

سباق



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

special

خاص

formal language

لغة رسمية

busy

مزدحم - مشغول

perfect

مثالي

French

فرنسي

meal

وجبة

sand dunes

كثبان رملية

local dishes

أطباق محلية



Famous countries and places

دول وأماكن مشهورة

Jardin Majorelle

حديقة ماجورييل (مدينة مراكش)

Marrakech

مدينة مراكش

Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa

مدرسة علي بن يوسف (أشهر مدارس المغرب)

Jemaa el-Fnaa

ساحة جامع الفنا (سوق في مراكش)

France

دولة فرنسا

Morocco

دولة المغرب

The Eiffel Tower

برج إيفل

The Louvre

متحف اللوفر



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

try

يحاول

tried

speak

يتحدث

spoke

wait

ينتظر

waited

understand

يفهم

understood

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

the diary entries

اقرأ المفكرات اليومية.

Dear Diary,

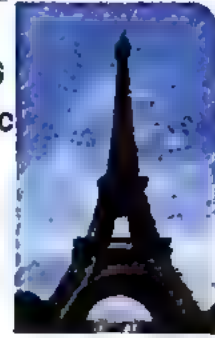
Reem

July 21st

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower.

The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me!

At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.



مفكرتي العزيزة،

لقد قضيت يوماً رائعاً اليوم. ذهبت إلى النهر. شاهدنا بعض المعالم السياحية الشهيرة من القارب، مثل متحف اللوفر، وهو متحف جميل به لوحات رائعة، و برج إيفل. برج إيفل طويل جداً ومصنوع من المعدن. حاولت التحدث باللغة الفرنسية، ولكن لم أستطع حقاً قول أي شيء. لكن الفرنسيين كانوا لطيفين جداً وعندما تحدثت بالإنجليزية فهموني في نهاية اليوم فمنا إلى مطعم فرنسي وتناولنا وجبة رائعة مع البطاطس. لقد كان يوماً مميزاً.

Dear Diary,

Amira

April 5th

I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We went early in the morning, but it was still very busy with people.

We also visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fnaa, the market place. The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry! I had a sandwich yesterday. I can't wait to go back there tomorrow!



مفكرتي العزيزة،

أنا أحب المدينة! هناك الكثير للقيام به. ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة علي بن يوسف، وهي متحف جميل عمره ٨٠٠ عام. ذهبنا في الصباح الباكر، لكنه كان لا يزال مزدحماً جداً بالناس. وزارنا أيضاً حديقة ماجورييل، وهي حديقة جميلة حيث قمنا بpicnic فيها. يعجبني المكان هناك لأنه يذكرني بالحدائق الأزهرية في الوطن. لكن المكان المفضل لدي هو جامع القناري وهو السوق الروائح الفاتحة من أكشاك السوق تجعلني أتمنى بالجوع! تناولت ساندوتشاً بالأمس. لا أطيق الانتظار للعودة إلى هناك غداً!

Note:

When you write a diary, remember to:

عندما تكتب مفكرة، تذكر أن:

- 1) Write the date. تكتب التاريخ.
- 2) Start with "Dear Diary". تبدأ بـ "مفكرتي العزيزة".
- 3) Include personal pronouns like "I" and "me". تضمن ضمائر شخصية مثل "I" و "me".
- 4) Describe the places / events. صف الأماكن والأحداث.
- 5) Say how you feel. تقول ما تشعر به.

Help your child read the diary entries.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المفكرات اليومية.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5) 173

Do you want to go on this vacation?

My perfect vacation

عطاتي المثالية

Day 1

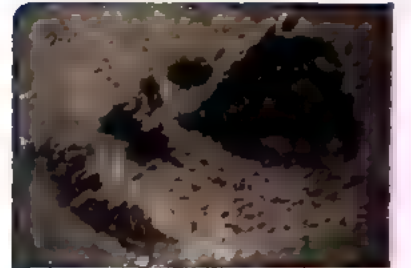
In the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkeling. Swim with the turtles and brightly-colored fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic and a good book.



اليوم الأول: في الصباح نذهب إلى الشاطئ للغطس. نسمح مع السلاحف والأصداك ذات الألوان الزاهية! يمكن قضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر على الشاطئ مع وجبة في الهواء الطلق وكتاب جيد.

Day 2

Today we race through the sand dunes in beach buggies! It's fun and fast! Can you keep up?



اليوم الثاني: اليوم نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية في عربات الشاطئ! إنها ممتعة وسريعة! هل يمكنك التحاق بنا؟

Day 3

Spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through the markets. Perhaps buy some traditional handicrafts to take home.



اليوم الثالث: ألقض يوماً مريحاً في التسوق والتجول في الأسواق. ربما نشتري بعض المصنوعات اليدوية التقليدية لنأخذها عند العودة إلى الوطن.

Day 4

Learn about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the local dishes.



اليوم الرابع: نتعرف على الماضي الثقافي للمدينة برحلة إلى المتحف اليوم. في المساء نذهب إلى مطعم تقليدي حيث يمكننا رؤية الشيف وهو يعد الأطباق المحلية.



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct word from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 In the morning, we go to the to go snorkeling.
a) beach b) park c) zoo d) restaurant
- 2 Swim with the and brightly-colored fish.
a) jellyfish b) octopus c) turtles d) ducks
- 3 The can be spent on the beach with a picnic.
a) morning b) afternoon c) evening d) night
- 4 Today we race through the dunes in the beach buggies.
a) sea b) beach c) sand d) sky

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 In the morning, we go to the to go snorkeling.
a) beach b) school c) zoo d) café
- 2 You can see the making the local dishes.
a) teacher b) chef c) vet d) tourist
- 3 The Eiffel Tower is made metal.
a) at b) by c) in d) of
- 4 Marrakech is a/an city.
a) bad b) awful c) busy d) sad

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1 race - the - Today - through - we - sand dunes - .

2 saw - famous - We - sights - some - .

3 you - Do - go - to - want - vacation - this - on - ?

4 Eiffel Tower - really - The - is - tall - .

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall. It is made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me. At the end of the day, we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the
a) Morocco b) pyramid c) Eiffel Tower d) Cairo Tower
- 2 We saw some famous sights from the
a) boat b) car c) bus d) plane

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What is the Eiffel Tower made of?
- 4 Where did you have a meal with potatoes?

5 Write a diary entry about.

اكتب مذكرات يومية عن.

A special day on vacation

Guiding questions:

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| - When was it? | - What did you see? |
| - Where did you go? | - What did you do? |

Review on Unit (11)

Vocabulary

desert	صحراء	land	يهبط / اليابسة
metal	معدن	market place	مكان التسوق
hotel	فندق	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
camera	كاميرا	the theme park	ملاهي
passport	جواز سفر	ticket	تذكرة
sunglasses	نظارة شمسية	museum	متحف
suitcase	حقيرة سفر	tourist	سائح
traditional	تقليدي	day trip	رحلة نهائية
wander	يتجول	handicrafts	أعمال يدوية
stall	كشك	bench	مقعد
diary	مفكرة	destination	وجهة مقصودة
picnic	نزهة	Al-Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر

Phonics صوتيات

(th) /θ/		(th) /ð/	
mouth فم	thing شيء	father أب	they هم
south جنوب	Thursday الخميس	mother أم	this هذا للقريب
birthday عيد ميلاد	think تفكر	leather جلد	these هؤلاء للقريب

Language

I go swimming on Mondays.

We play basketball at lunchtime.

We visit our cousins in June.

Help your child revise unit (11).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الحادية عشر.

Writing Corner

- 1 Write a paragraph of about (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

"A trip"

Last summer, I went on a trip, I went with my family. We went to Singapore. We had got a lovely hotel room. The view was beautiful and we could see the beach. Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Bay is a really special place. It was great.

"Al-Azhar Park"

Al-Azhar Park is in Cairo. I went on vacation to Al-Azhar Park. Our mom made a picnic, so we sat under a big tree on the cool grass and enjoyed our food. It was such a beautiful day. We played football. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. I think this is a fantastic place.

- 2 Write a diary entry about Reem's day. اكتب ملاحظة يومية عن يوم ريم.

July 21st

Reem

Dear Diary,

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب الفقرات.



Dictation on Unit (11)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
إجازة	إجازة	خليج	خليج
مزدحمة	مزدحمة	جواز سفر	جواز سفر
فندق	فندق	رحلة عمل	رحلة عمل
متحف	متحف	تذكرة	تذكرة
حمام سباحة	حمام سباحة	حقيبة	حقيبة

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
رحلة نهارية	رحلة نهارية	تقليدي	تقليدي
أعمال يدوية	أعمال يدوية	يتجول	يتجول
مرشد سياحي	مرشد سياحي	جولة سياحية	جولة سياحية
وجهة مقصودة	وجهة مقصودة	مفكرة	مفكرة

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
مقعد	مقعد	يلهب في إجازة	يلهب في إجازة
نزلة	نزلة	ممکن	ممکن
مدهش / رائع	مدهش / رائع	حديقة الأزهر	حديقة الأزهر

Lessons (4 - 5)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
مشاهد	مشاهد	مزدحم - مشغول	مزدحم - مشغول
رياضة الفطس	رياضة الفطس	سباق	سباق
طباخ - طاه	طباخ - طاه	عربات الشاطئ	عربات الشاطئ
متحف اللوفر	متحف اللوفر	مثالي	مثالي

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (11)

1 Listen and circle the correct word from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 On, we arrived in Amman.
a) Saturday b) Tuesday c) Monday d) Sunday
- 2 The flight landed at o'clock.
a) 3 b) 12 c) 10 d) 4
- 3 It was so in October.
a) hot b) warm c) cold d) rainy
- 4 We went to our and checked in.
a) hotel b) house c) land d) park

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 You can make sand castles on the
a) suitcase b) passport c) beach d) hotel
- 2 Mohamed Salah is a very footballer.
a) fame b) poison c) expense d) famous
- 3 We put our clothes in a when we travel.
a) passport b) camera c) ticket d) suitcase
- 4 The Eiffel Tower is made of
a) paper b) glass c) metal d) bricks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

football - family - restaurant - grass - picnic

Last Friday, I went to Al-Azhar Park. I went there with my
1) My mom made a 2) We sat under
a big tree on the 3) and enjoyed the food. I played
4) with my brother.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

On Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm in October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center. Amman is a really busy city at night. We walked around the markets and bought some traditional handicrafts. We went back to our hotel at about midnight.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 On , we arrived in Amman.
a) weekend b) Monday c) Tuesday d) Sunday
- 2 Amman is really a city at night.
a) quiet b) busy c) bad d) ugly

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 How did the writer travel to Amman?
- 4 Where did the writer have dinner?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 birthday - Reem's - December - on - is - 5th - .

2 last - visit - Did - Al-Azhar Park - weekend - you - ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 Don't drink that! It could be (poison) .
- 2 Our school ends (on) the summer.

7 Punctuate the following.

⇒ farouk is a farmer in aswan.

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding words: Perfect vacation

(go - beach - snorkelling - swim - picnic)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al- Azhar Corner

1 Listen and choose the correct answer. **استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.**

- Today was the day ever.
a) worst b) bad c) wrong d) best
- I love anything to do with
a) math b) English c) history d) French
- I always go to the at home.
a) park b) museum c) zoo d) restaurant

2 Listen and choose the correct answer. **استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.**

- On, we arrived in Amman.
a) Sunday b) Monday c) Friday d) Tuesday
- The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the
a) morning b) evening c) afternoon d) night
- It was so warm in
a) May b) June c) May d) October

2 Read and complete the dialogue with: **اقرأ واكمل المحادثة بـ:**

passport - vacation - take - phone

- Hamza : Where are you going on 1)
Ali : I am going to Singapore.
Hamza : What do you 2) with you on vacation?
Ali : I need my 3) to travel to a different country
and I always take my 4) so I can take photos.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with: **اقرأ واكمل المحادثة بـ:**

interesting - Park - sad - vacation

- Seleem : Why are you feeling 1)
Marwan : The school was over and I want to go on 2)
Seleem : How about going to Al-Azhar 3)
Marwan : It sounds 4)
Seleem : Let's meet at 7 am on Monday.

Unit 12

FICTION READER A FANTASTIC FAMILY ADVENTURE

مغامرة عائلية رائعة



BY NICOLA GARDNER
ILLUSTRATED BY NATHALIE ORTEGA

Story map

The Characters

الشخصيات



The setting

المكان والزمان

Places الأماكن

desert الصحراء - grandparent's village قرية الجد والجددة - Ramy's house منزل رامي

Time الوقت

in the morning في الصباح - in the evening في المساء

Story plot

حبكة القصة

Beginning بداية القصة

- A group of archaeologists found a skeleton of a dinosaur.
- وجد مجموعة من علماء الآثار هيكل عظمي للديناصور.
- The job of archaeologists is very important.
- وظيفة علماء الآثار مهمة جدًا.
- The family decided to go on an adventure in the desert.
- قررت العائلة الذهاب في مغامرة في الصحراء.

Middle منتصف القصة

- The family are ready to walk the nature trail.
- العائلة مستعدة للسير في درب الطبيعة.
- The family went near the place where they found the dinosaur skeleton.
- ذهبت العائلة بالقرب من المكان الذي وجد فيه الهيكل العظمي للديناصور.
- Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks Ramy found.
- العم يوسف مهتم بشدة بالصخور التي عثر عليها رامي.

End نهاية القصة

- Ramy is disappointed.
- رامي محبط.
- Archaeologists found the skeleton because of climate change.
- وجد علماء الآثار الهيكل العظمي بسبب تغير المناخ.
- Ramy learned that it's important to look around us carefully.
- تعلم رامي إنه من المهم النظر حولنا بعناية.

dinosaur
ديناصور

Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.

كانت الديناصورات حيوانات ضخمة جدًا والتي عاشت منذ ملايين السنين.

Our body has many bones to help us stand up.

جسمنا به عظام كثيرة لتساعدنا على الوقول.

bones
عظامskeleton
الهيكال العظمي

Fish and other animals have a skeleton made of bones inside their bodies.

الأسماك والحيوانات الأخرى لها هيكل يتكون من العظام داخل أجسامهم.

Animals' feet leave tracks on the ground where they walked.

تترك أقدام الحيوانات آثارًا على الأرض حيث مشته.

tracks
آثار (الأقدام)binoculars
المصطغر

She likes looking at things in the distance with her binoculars.

إنها تحب النظر إلى الأشياء من على بعد بواسطة منظارها.

An ibex is a type of desert animal like a gazelle.

الوعول هو أحد أنواع الحيوانات الصحراوية مثل الغزال.

ibex
الوعولarchaeologist
عالم الآثار

An archaeologist is someone who digs underground to find objects from many years ago and studies them.

عالم الآثار هو الشخص الذي يحفر تحت الأرض ليعثر على أشياء منذ سنين عديدة ويدرسها.

An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something under the ground.

الحفر الأثري عندما يعمل الناس سويًا للعثور على شيء ما تحت الأرض.

archaeological dig
حفر أثري

The Beginning



Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house.

"Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper!"

The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing near Grandma and Grandpa's village."

"What is it, Dad?" asks Ramy. "It looks scary!"

Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the **skeleton** of a **dinosaur**."

A group of **archaeologists** found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

يلعب رامى وملك فى الفناء. فجأة ينادى عليهم الوالد من المنزل. قال الأب "هاي يا أطفال، تعالوا وانظروا إلى هذه القصة فى الجريدة". جرى الأطفال إلى الداخل ليروا. قال الأب: "انظروا، وجدوا شيئاً مذهلاً بالقرب من قرية الجد والجدة." يسأل رامى: "ما هذا الشيء يا أبى، إنه يبدو مخيفاً."

يقول الأب: "لا يا رامى، إنه ليس مخيفاً على الإطلاق! إنه هيكل عظمى لديناصور. مجموعة من علماء الآثار عثروا عليه. وعمكم يوسف أحد هؤلاء العلماء."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع أحداث القصة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

187



"That's awesome, Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?" "Yes, that's right, Malak," says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!" "Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really interesting job, hasn't he?" says Ramy. "Yes, he has. And his work is important too. It helps us learn about the past," says Dad.

تقول ملك: "هذا مذهل يا أبي. أن الهيكل العظمي لهذا الديناصور حقا قديم، اليس كذلك؟" يقول الأب: "هذا صحيح يا ملك. إن عمره تقريبا ٩٨ مليون عامًا!". يقول رامي: "واو، إن عمي يوسف لديه وظيفة شيقة حقا، اليس كذلك؟" يقول الأب: "نعم، كذلك. وعمله مهم أيضا. فعمله يساعدنا أن نتعلم عن الماضي."



Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner.

Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?"

Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an adventure to go into the desert!"

Mom says, "There's a beautiful nature trail there. Why don't we walk that together?"

Oh yes please, Mom! I love nature," says Malak.

"وكان زامي وأسرته يتناولون العشاء في وقت متأخر من ذلك المساء ."

يقول الأب: "هل تريدون الذهاب هناك المرة القادمة عندما نذهب إلى منزل الجدة؟"

يقول رامي: "إنها فكرة رائعة يا أبي. ستكون مغامرة أن نذهب إلى الصحراء!"

تقول الأم: "يوجد متنزه طبيعي جميل هناك. لم لا نتمشى هناك عليه سوياً؟"

تقول ملك: "أوه نعم من فضلك يا أمي! أنا أحب الطبيعة."



"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so excited to see her grandchildren.

"I have prepared your favorite things - feteer and mint tea! Come inside and eat."

"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."

"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."

"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

تنادى الجدة "رامي! ملك!". فهي سعيدة جدًا لرؤية أحفادها، وقالت: "لقد أعددت لكم فطير وشاي نعنع! هيا إلى الداخل لتتناولا الطعام."

يقول الجد لأبي ولأمي: "مرحبًا، إنه لشيء رائع جدًا أن أراكما." قال أبي: "إنه شيء جميل أن نكون هنا." يريدان أن يأخذ

الأطفال في جولة في الطبيعة." قال الجد: "ممتاز." "هناك الكثير ليراه في منطقتنا. إنه مكان جميل."

Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

اقرأ واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. ☐
- 2 Archaeologists found the skeleton of an ibex in grandparents' village. ☐
- 3 Uncle Youssef is an archaeologist. ☐
- 4 The family will take the children on a nature trail. ☐

2 Complete the following sentences.

أكمل الجمل الآتية.

- 1 Dad sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the
- 2 The dinosaur skeleton is near grandparents'
- 3 Uncle Youssef is an
- 4 Grandma is so to see her grandchildren.

3 Answer the following questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

- 1 Where did "Dad" see the story?
.....
- 2 What did the archaeologists find near the village?
.....
- 3 How do the archaeologists help us?
.....
- 4 What did "Grandma" prepare for the grandchildren?
.....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5) 191

The Middle



The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses. They have snacks and water in their backpacks. Mom has some **binoculars** too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of **rare** animals.

كان الكل سعيد في الصباح التالي. كانوا مستعدين للتزعم عبر لطبيعة. وكانوا يرتدون قبعة، وأوشحة ونظارات شمسية. وكان معهم وجبات خفيفة والماء في حقائبهم. وكان مع ادم منظرا أيضا. فكانت تريد أن تنظر إلى الطيور النادرة التي تعيش هناك. وكانوا في جزء جميل من أرض مصر والذي به أنواع من الحيوانات النادرة.



It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect day for walking. There are cactus plants and palm trees and they see sheep and some camels.

Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone," she says. "If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox, or a dorcas gazelle, or maybe a sand cat."

The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals' **tracks** in the sand. Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

كان اليوم جميلاً دافئاً ، ونسراً بالحر الشديد. وكان يوماً مثالياً للتمشية. كان هناك نباتات الصبار وأشجار النخيل ورأوا أغنام وبعض الجمال.

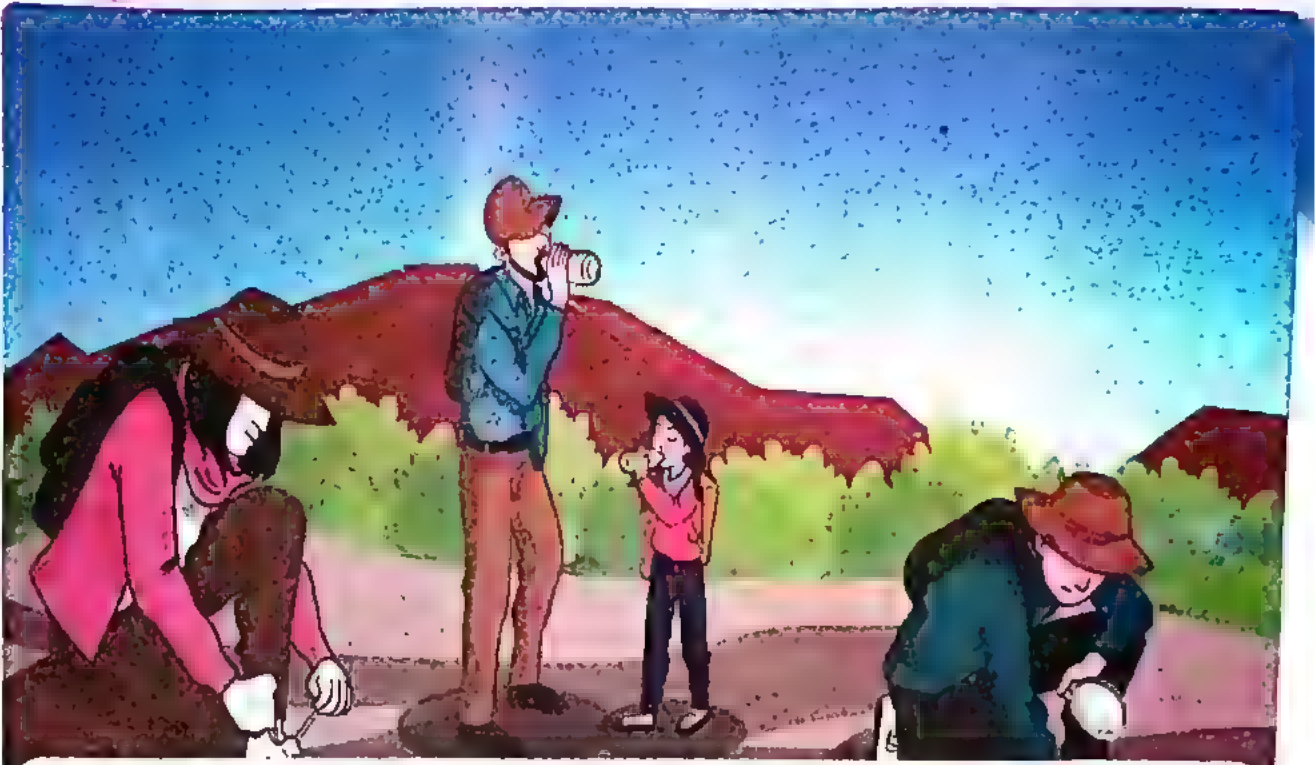
كانت ملك مسرورة جداً لأنها تحب الحيوانات. وتقول "امشوا بهدوء وحرص جميعاً". وأضافت "إذا كنا هادئين ، يمكن أن نرى ثعلب الفنك ، أو غزال الصحراء ، أو ربما قطة رملية." تستمر الأسرة على طول الطريق. يرى رامي آثار الحيوانات في الرمال. يلتقط الأب صورة لثعلب الفنك. ترى الأم العديد من الطيور الجميلة. والكل كان مستمتعاً بالنزهة.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتبع أحداث القصة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

193



Then Mom says, "Hey everyone, I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?"

She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them.

"Look!" he says. "What are these things in the rocks, Dad?"

"I don't know," says Dad. "They look like bones...."

"We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton," says Mom.

"Maybe they are dinosaur bones!"

Ramy is very excited. "Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says. "Dad, can we call him?"

"Yes, of course," says Dad.

Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

ثم تلقت الأم نظر الجميع وتقول "لدي شيء في حذائي. هل يمكن أن نتوقف لدقيقة؟"

تجلس الأم. والباقي يشرب الماء وينتظر. ينظر رامي لأسفل على الصخور القريبة من الممر. يرى بعض الأشكال الغريبة بداخلها.

ويقول "انظروا!". "ما هي هذه الأشياء التي في الصخور، يا أبي؟"

يقول الأب: "أنا لا أعرف". "إنها تشبه العظام...."

تقول الأم: "نحن قريبين جدًا من المكان الذي عثروا فيه على هيكل الديناصور...". "ربما كانت عظام ديناصورات!" رامي متحمس

جدًا. وهو يقول: "هيا نسال العم يوسف!" وسأل والده قائلًا: "هل يمكن أن نتصل به؟" يقول الأب: "نعم، بالطبع.". العم يوسف

مهتم جدًا بالصخور التي عثر عليها رامي. ويقوم بإخبار الأب أن يلتقط بعض الصور للصخور ومقابلته على العشاء في منزل الجدة.



Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء يعرض الأب الصور على العم يوسف كما يبين رامي له المكان على الخريطة. يطلب العم يوسف من الأسرة أن يأتوا معه إلى هناك في اليوم التالي.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع أحداث القصة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

195



Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

اقرأ واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- 1 The family goes on the nature trail.
- 2 Mom doesn't like watching amazing birds.
- 3 There aren't any animals to see.
- 4 Ramy found some bones.

2 Complete the following sentences.

أكمل الجمل الآتية.

- 1 Mom has some to look at the birds.
- 2 Malak is very pleased because she loves
- 3 Everyone is enjoying the
- 4 Ramy found at the rocks near the path.

3 Answer the following questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

- 1 What did the family pack for the nature trail?
.....
- 2 What did mom like?
.....
- 3 How was the weather that day?
.....
- 4 What did uncle Youssef ask the family to do?
.....

The End



The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.

"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist now."

Ramy is disappointed because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?"

"Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

في اليوم التالي يعودون هناك عبر الدمشي. ويعثرون على صخور رامي وينظر إليهم العم يوسف بعناية. يقول العم يوسف: "إنها ليست عظام ديناصورات في الصخور". لكنها بالتأكيد قديمة جدا. فإنها ربما نوع من أنواع الوعل القديم الذي لم يعد موجود الآن. "رامي معبط لأن العظام لم تكن عظام ديناصور. ولكن يقول العم يوسف، "أحسنت يا رامي لعثورك عليها! فمن المهم أن نأخذ الوقت لننظر إلى العالم من حولنا ونشاهد الأشياء - فقط كعالم آثارا والآن، هل تودون أن نأخذوا إلى الحفر الأثرى ونروا هيكل الديناصور الخاص بي؟" يقول رامي وملك: "نعم من فضلك يا عم يوسف".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتبع أحداث القصة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

197



"Here it is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"

"Wow!" says Rami. "It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."

"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time." says Malak.

"In fact, we found the skeleton because of climate change." says Uncle Youssef.

"Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is dry and the wind can blow away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the surface. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the planet."

يقول العم يوسف: "ها هو". "ما رأيكم؟" يقول رامي: "واو!" "إنه شيء مذهل أن تفكر كيف عاش هذا منذ ملايين السنين." وتقول ملك: "وعظامه هذه كانت تحت الأرض بهذه الفترة الطويلة." يقول العم يوسف: "في الحقيقة، عبرا على هذا الهيكل العظمي بسبب تغير المناخ. وأصبح الآن هناك كمية قليلة من الأمطار ونباتات أقل. هذا يعني أن الأرض جافة والرياح كانت تهب مبعدة الرمال. هناك أشياء كانت تحت الأرض وتحركت إلى السطح. هذا الأشياء جيدة لعلماء الآثار ولكنها سيئة للكوكب."



Later everyone is getting ready to go home.

"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef," says Ramy. "It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!"

"It's fascinating work, but it's hard," says Uncle Youssef. "Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything."

"We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.

"Thanks for all the delicious food," says Mom. "It was lovely to see you both again."

"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon," says Grandma.

في اليوم التالي كان الجميع مستعدًا للعودة إلى المنزل. يقول رامي: "شكرا لك يا عم يوسف أن أرينا الديناصور. كان شيقًا. أود أن أكون عالم آثار. إنها وظيفة رائعة."

يقول العم يوسف: "إنه عمل منهج، لكنه شاق، فأحيانًا نقوم بالبحث لسنوات ولا نخرج على أي شيء."

تقول ملك: "يمكننا المساعدة لو أنك تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى."

تقول أمي للجد والجددة: "شكرا على كل هذا الطعام اللذيذ. كان شيئًا جميلًا أن نرى كلاكما ثانية."

تقول الجددة: "شكرا لكم أعزائي. عودوا لرؤيتنا قريبًا."



"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.

"Yes, I thought it was fantastic." says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.

"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.

Ramy says, "I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our environment."

"Yes, that is how you can discover interesting things." adds Malak.

"You're right, kids" says Dad. "Well done!"

تقول الأم وهي في السيارة: "إذن، هل استمتعتم برحلتنا؟" يقول رامي: "نعم، أعتقد أنها كانت رائعة." يقول ملك: "وأنا أيضاً"
يسأل الأب: "وماذا تعتقدوا أنكم تعلمتم منها؟"
يقول رامي: "أنا تعلمت أنه من المهم أن ننظر حولنا بعناية ونلاحظ الأشياء التي في بيئتنا."
وتضيف ملك: "نعم، هكذا يمكنك أن تكتشف أشياء شيقة."
يقول الأب: "أنتم على حق، يا أطفال" أحسنتم!"



Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

اقرأ واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1 The bones, that Ramy found, are from a dinosaur.

☐

2 It is important to look at the world around us and watch things.

☐

3 They found the skeleton because of climate change.

☐

4 The children didn't enjoy their trip.

☐

2 Complete the following sentences.

أكمل الجمل الآتية.

1 Uncle Youssef looks at carefully.

2 The bones are from a type of ancient

3 They found the skeleton of dinosaur because of

4 Ramy wants to be an

3 Answer the following questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

1 Why is Ramy disappointed?

.....

2 What is the moral of the story?

.....

3 What does Ramy want to be?

.....

4 How do children feel?

.....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

201





General Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

اقرأ واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

- ☐ Mom sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper.
- ☐ The dinosaur skeleton is near their house.
- ☐ Uncle Youssef is a farmer.
- ☐ Mom loves looking at birds.
- ☐ Ramy finds dinosaur bones.
- ☐ They go to uncle Youssef's office.

2 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <input type="radio"/> Dad reads a story | <input type="radio"/> a live near the archaeological dig. |
| <input type="radio"/> The children's grandparents | <input type="radio"/> b the family to the dig. |
| <input type="radio"/> Ramy finds old bones | <input type="radio"/> c about a dinosaur in the newspaper. |
| <input type="radio"/> Uncle Youssef invites | <input type="radio"/> d an archaeologist in the future. |
| <input type="radio"/> Ramy wants to be | <input type="radio"/> e in some rocks near the trail |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-() 5-()

3 Discuss the questions.

اقش هذه الأسئلة.

- ☐ Why is it important to look carefully at the world around you
- ☐ What information can archaeology (علم الآثار) give us?
- ☐ Why is archaeology an important activity in Egypt?
- ☐ Why are dinosaur skeletons interesting? What can they tell us?

Review (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct word from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 We arrived in Alexandria on
a) Monday b) Saturday c) Sunday d) Tuesday
- 2 There is so to see here.
a) little b) much c) less d) many
- 3 We had an amazing of famous places.
a) picnic b) trip c) tour d) sight
- 4 The city is very and crowded.
a) hot b) cold c) empty d) busy

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 The is somewhere to stay when you are on vacation.
a) hotel b) home c) park d) passport
- 2 I like the food my mother usually cooks.
a) ugly b) bad c) awful d) delicious
- 3 Don't drink that. It could be
a) honey b) famous c) poisonous d) expensive
- 4 My grandfather usually tells us funny stories to us.
a) entertain b) laugh c) get d) buy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

played - food - arrived - sand - tent

I'm having a real adventure here. We 1) on the weekend and setup our 2) It's quite different to sleep in a tent on 3) ! At night, we sit around a fire. We eat delicious 4), which we cook on the fire.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

203



**4 Read the following text and answer the questions.**

When I was on vacation, I went to a camp where boys and girls look at the stars. At the campsite a boy named Jason was setting up his tent. I asked him what he was learning about the stars. He said "I'm learning their names and how to read a star map. The best time to look at the stars is late at night, when it's clear and not cloudy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- ① Jason went to a on vacation.
a) library b) camp c) museum d) school
- ② Jason was setting his tent.
a) in b) on c) up d) under

B) Answer the following questions.

- ③ What was Jason learning about the stars?
- ④ When is the best time to see the stars?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

① flew - We - to - on - Alexandria - Monday - .

② usually - in - Her - visit - her - cousins - July - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

① We flew to Alexandria (at) Monday

② Faten, (does) this exercise again, please

7 Punctuate the following.

⇒ what can you do there

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding questions: "Sharm El-Sheikh"

1- Where is it?

2- What can you do there?

3- Why do tourists like it?

4- Why do you like it?



Listening Texts

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hi! Dina, welcome to my new apartment. My parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment. The new kitchen is bigger. There's more space in the living room so we have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share my bedroom with my sister.

Lesson (2)

listen and circle the correct answer.

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

Lesson (3)

listen and circle the correct answer.

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls.

Lessons (4 & 5)

listen and circle the correct answer.

The upside down house is in the Netherlands. It is actually an old farmhouse. All the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool!

Activities On Unit (7)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hi, My name's Dalida and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect.

Al-Azhar Corner (Unit 7)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used it water for drinking, cooking and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses.

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

Only five people came to the club today! They have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle. Amr had an earache. Lama went to the dentist because she had a toothache. The coach told us to be careful when we have a cough or a sore throat.

Lesson (2)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

There is a very busy hospital in India. That treats patients from all over the country. Sick people usually go to hospital with many relatives so this means the hospital is always very crowded. To solve the problem, the staff began to teach

Listening Texts

people how to help their patients at home. So, a few number go to hospital now.

Lesson (3)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

To stay healthy, it's very important to drink plenty of water. This keeps your body working well. It's especially important if it's a very hot day or if you're exercising. You should have healthy food, too. It's important to do sport. Sports make us healthy and fit.

Activities On Unit (8)

1- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Scientists say that some types of honey can kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. The honey that doctors use is a special honey. You can mix some honey with milk to make your cough better.

Al-Azhar Corner (Unit 8)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Fares didn't have a good day at the club. Five people didn't come to the club today. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

This text is about a hospital in India. It is a very busy place that treats patient from all over the country. People unusual travel to the hospital with many relatives.

Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

Last week Omar went to a wildlife park with his friends. He enjoyed it very much. They saw lots of different animals like lions, kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the parrots. He was a bit sad because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a project on them at school.

Lesson (2)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived.

Lesson (3)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

A famous Egyptian footballer in England is Mohamed El Neny. He plays for Arsenal. He is Egyptian.

Lessons (4&5)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

Dear Tamer

This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

Amir

Activities On Unit (9)**Listen and circle the correct answer.**

The dugong is a marine animal. It lives all his life in water. It eats grass from the sea bed. Its nickname is the sea cow.

Al-Azhar Corner (Unit 9)**1- Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Ramez went to a wildlife park yesterday. He went with his family. They saw lots of different animals like lions, kangaroos, and penguins.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Last Wednesday I decided to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano. I met some whales and they turned over my boat.

Activities on Review (3)**1- Listen and circle the correct answer.**

I had a lovely day yesterday. I traveled to Alexandria with my mom to see my aunt. We went by train.

Unit (10)**Lesson (1)****Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do there! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets and museums. There's even a beach!

Lesson (3)**Listen and circle the correct answer.**

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, took the sacks of beans. It took them to the market for him."

Lessons (4&5)**Listen and circle the correct answer.**

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a water park that is always open. It's free to go in!

Activities On Unit (10)**Listen and circle the correct answer.**

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long. There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city.

Al-Azhar Corner (Unit 10)**1- Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo. It's next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes.

Unit (11)**Lesson (1)****Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Today mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hany. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hany were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.



Lesson (2)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water. You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin.

Lesson (3)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible. Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.

Lessons (4&5)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

In the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkelling. Swim with the turtles and brightly-colored fish. The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic and a good book. Today we race through the sand dunes in beach buggies.

Activities On Unit (11)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

On Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm in October. We went to our hotel and checked in.

Al-Azhar Corner (Unit 11)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with history. I always go

to the museum at home, so today was a special day for me.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

On Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm in October.

Activities on Review (4)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hi Ghada,

We arrived in Alexandria on Monday, and we haven't stopped! There is so much to see here. We visited some museums and the theatre. We had an amazing tour of famous places. It's really fun, but very busy and crowded.

See you soon,

Randa.

AL-BAHER

CONNECT

Final Revision

Second Term

الصف الخامس الابتدائي



Parents' Guide

5th
Primary
2024



Scanned with OKEN Scanner



LANGUAGE FOCUS

- Some phrases are used to tell someone where things are.

بعض العبارات تستخدم لإخبار شخص ما عن مكان الأشياء.

on the right

on the left

على اليمين

on the wall

in the middle of....

في منتصف ...

next to

جوار

- 1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- the right of the room, there is an armchair.

a) At

b) In

c) Of

d) On

- My bed is next a table.

a) at

b) in

c) on

d) to

- the left of the room, there is my sister's bed.

a) On

b) To

c) In

d) Of

- the middle of the room, there's a table.

a) On

b) To

c) In

d) At

- the wall of the room, there are lots of posters.

a) To

b) On

c) At

d) In

- Hamza sits to Omar.

a) next

b) behind

c) middle

d) from

- I hang some photos the wall.

a) in

b) on

c) at

d) by

- 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- There is a closet, (in) the right of the room.

- My bed is next (of) a table.

- (to) the left, there is a desk.

- (On) the middle of the room, there is a table.

- (In) the wall of the room, there are lots of posters.



Prefix

A prefix is a set of letters, which we add before the main word to make a new word.

Un-

means 'not'.

We add "un-" at the beginning of a word to get the opposite meaning.

friendly	ودود	→	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	→	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	مطلوب	→	unlucky	غير مطلوب
safe	آمن	→	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	→	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	→	unfair	غير عادل

1. Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 His cat died last week. He was very
 a) happy b) unhappy c) unfair d) unsafe
- 2 The armchair is very to sit on.
 a) uncomfortable b) unkind c) unlucky d) unfair
- 3 It's to go down the dark street alone.
 a) comfortable b) unhappy c) unsafe d) lucky
- 4 It's to eat everything and don't leave any for us.
 a) unlucky b) unfair c) unhappy d) unsafe
- 5 He's very because he missed the bus.
 a) unlucky b) unfriendly c) unfair d) unsafe

- 1. She's very She never smiles or tries to make friends.
a) unlucky b) unfriendly c) unfair d) unsafe
- 2. I'm glad that he didn't buy that couch. It was really
a) uncomfortable b) unhappy c) unlucky d) safe
- 3. She's very because she lost her homework.
a) unfriendly b) unhappy c) unsafe d) unfair
- 4. That electrical wire looks very Don't touch it.
a) unsafe b) unfriendly c) unhappy d) unfair
- 5. We all thought the new girl was but actually she just didn't talk much.
a) unlucky b) unfriendly c) unfair d) unsafe
- 6. The word "unsafe" means
a) safe b) dangerous c) simple d) easy
- 7. We add the prefix to "happy" to give its opposite.
a) in- b) im- c) un- d) dis-
- 8. The word "unhappy" is the same meaning as
a) sad b) glad c) funny d) pleased

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1. His cat died last week. He was very (**happy**).
- 2. The armchair is very (**comfortable**). I can't sit on it.
- 3. He's very (**lucky**) because he missed the bus.
- 4. That electrical wire looks very (**safe**). Don't touch it.

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

1- To talk about something that happened once.

١- للتعبير عن شيء حدث ذات مرة فيما مضى.

e.g. I **visited** her house when I **was** five.

2- To talk about something that happened several times in the past.

٢- للتعبير عن شيء حدث عدة مرات في الماضي.

e.g. We **went** to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

3- To talk about something that was true for some time in the past.

٣- للتعبير عن شيء ما كان حقيقياً لوقت ما في الماضي.

e.g. He **loved** living in his grandmother's apartment **as a child**.

4- Expressions with **ago**.

٤- التعبيرات مع (ago).

e.g. I met her in Zagazig **two years ago**.

Form التكوين

The second form of the verb.

التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

يُضاف للفعل المنتظم (d, ed, ied).

use → used { play → played { try → tried

- We add (d) when the verb ends in (e).

نضيف (d) عندما ينتهي الفعل بـ (e).

live lived { die died { create created

- We add **(ed)** to the other regular verbs.

نضيف (ed) لنهاية الأفعال المنتظمة الأخرى.

travel → traveled { want → wanted { help → helped

- We change **(-y)** to **(-i)** and add **(-ed)** when the verb ends in a consonant + **(y)**

نحول ال (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (ed) للفعل المنتهي بـ (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن.

try → tried { carry → carried { study → studied

Irregular verbs

الأفعال الغير منتظمة

come → came { eat → ate { see → saw

Study these verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
visit يزور	visited	happen يحدث	happened
love يحب	loved	help يساعد	helped
carry يحمل	carried	travel يسافر	traveled
look up ينظر لأعلى	looked up	start يبدأ	started
create يبتكر	created	rain تمطر	rained

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
go يذهب	went	meet يقابل	met
am / is يكون	was	tell يخبر	told
are يكونوا	were	say يقول	said
take يأخذ	took	set out يبدأ رحلة	set out

Negative النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. The people **didn't help** him with his work.

Questions

(Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر)?

e.g. Did you visit Ali yesterday? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q.W. + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر)?

e.g. When did you meet Heba?
- I met her two days ago.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	last	الماضي
ago	منذ	in the past	في الماضي
in 2020	في عام ٢٠٢٠	Once	ذات مرة

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 I a lovely day yesterday.
a) has b) have c) having d) had
- 2 Last summer, I to Alexandria with mum.
a) go b) went c) goes d) going

- 3 The sea really beautiful.
a) be b) being c) were d) was
- 4 Yesterday, we juice at a café in the square.
a) drink b) drinks c) drank d) drinking
- 5 We to the market two days ago.
a) drive b) drove c) drives d) driving
- 6 I nearly the train yesterday.
a) missed b) has missed c) misses d) missing
- 7 I her house when I was five.
a) visit b) visiting c) visited d) visits
- 8 They her in Zagazig two years ago.
a) meet b) met c) meeting d) meets
- 9 He to South America, when he was younger.
a) traveled b) travel c) traveling d) travels
- 10 A local villager him where there was a howler monkey.
a) tell b) told c) tells d) telling
- 11 The rain very heavy yesterday.
a) were b) was c) been d) is
- 12 She beautiful birds yesterday.
a) see b) saw c) seen d) sees
- 13 We some new friends last vacation.
a) meeting b) meets c) meet d) met
- 14 She to visit us yesterday.
a) came b) comes c) come d) coming
- 15 He didn't all over Egypt.
a) travels b) traveled c) travel d) traveling

- 16 He eat Om Ali in Tanta last week.
a) didn't b) don't c) doesn't d) doing
- 17 Where Ancient Egyptians build their homes?
a) do b) does c) did d) doing
- 18 In Ancient Egypt, people water from the Nile.
a) use b) used c) using d) uses
- 19 What did people to build their homes?
a) use b) used c) using d) uses
- 20 They didn't by airplane.
a) came b) comes c) come d) coming
- 21 Where did you last week?
a) go b) went c) goes d) going

2) Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 We (go) to my aunt's house last summer.
- 2 I (meet) her at the club two years ago.
- 3 He (visit) her house when he was five.
- 4 He (carry) our heavy cases to the car last night.
- 5 Yesterday, my cousin (come) to visit us.
- 6 Ancient Egyptians (make) their homes near the Nile.
- 7 He didn't (traveled) all over Egypt.
- 8 Our grandma (go) to Aswan last year.
- 9 It (rain) heavily yesterday.
- 10 Ancient Egyptians (want) to keep their homes cool.
- 11 Did you (came) late?
- 12 What did he (told) you?



Verb to "have" in the present simple

- We use (have) to talk about illness.

نستخدم الفعل (have) بمعنى (الذي / غلده / معالج) مع المريض

Form

I / You / We / They / Plural noun → have

eg. I **have** a headache.

He / She / It / Singular noun → has

eg. Amr **has** a stomachache.

Negative

I / You / We / They / Plural noun → don't have

eg. I **don't have** a sore throat.

He / She / It / Singular noun → doesn't have

eg. He **doesn't have** a stomachache.

Question

(Yes / No) question:

Do + I / you / we / they / plural noun → have ...?

eg. Do you **have** a headache?

- Yes, I **do**.

- No, I **don't**.

Does + he / she / it / singular noun → have ...?

eg. Does Noha **have** a toothache?

- Yes, she **does**.

- No, she **doesn't**.



Wh- question

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + have ...?

e.g. What do you have? - I have a cold.

e.g. What does she have? - She has a backache.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 I a headache.
a) has b) have c) were d) am
- 2 Ali a stomachache.
a) has b) are having c) have d) having
- 3 They a headache.
a) has b) have c) is having d) having
- 4 have a cold.
a) We b) She c) It d) He
- 5 has a toothache.
a) We b) They c) You d) He
- 6 Do you an earache?
a) has b) have c) having d) had
- 7 she have a cold?
a) Does b) Do c) Is d) Are
- 8 they have a cold?
a) Does b) Do c) Is d) Are
- 9 Do you a headache?
a) has b) have c) had d) having
- 10 I have a toothache.
a) doesn't b) don't c) doing d) does



- 11 Nader have a headache?
a) Do b) Does c) Didn't d) Doing
- 12 He doesn't a sore throat.
a) has b) have c) having d) had
- 13 Ghada an earache.
a) doesn't have b) don't have c) have d) having
- 14 I a stomachache.
a) doesn't have b) don't have c) has d) having
- 15 Nahla and Reem a cough.
a) doesn't have b) have c) has d) having
- 16 My brother a toothache.
a) doesn't have b) don't have c) have d) having
- 17 have a cut on my arm.
a) He b) She c) It d) I
- 18 Nada have a headache.
a) wasn't b) isn't c) don't d) doesn't
- 19 Does she an earache?
a) has b) have c) had d) having
- 20 Do a headache?
a) have you b) has you c) you has d) you have

2) Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 Do you (has) an earache?
- 2 (Do) she have a cold?
- 3 Amir (have) a stomachache.
- 4 I (doesn't) have a toothache.
- 5 Sara (don't) have a headache.
- 6 We (has) a headache.

Can - Can't

Usage الاستخدام

We use "can" to talk about something we are able to do in the present.

نستخدم "can" للتعبير عن شيء نستطيع فعله في المضارع.

Form التكوين

Subject (الفاعل) + can + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. Birds can fly.

Negative النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + can't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. Penguins can't fly.

(Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Can + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

e.g. - Can a parrot fly? - Yes, it can.

Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Question word + can + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

e.g. - What can you do? - I can ride a bike.



Could - Couldn't

Usage الاستخدام

We use "could" to talk about something we were able to do in the past.

نستخدم "could" للتعبير عن شيء كنا نستطيع فعله في الماضي.

Form التكوين

Subject (الفاعل) + could + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. I could speak French.

e.g. I could ride a bike.

Negative النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + couldn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. I couldn't take the metro so I had to walk.

e.g. They couldn't fly their kites.

(Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Could + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

e.g. - Could you write when you were five? - Yes, I could.

Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Question word + could + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

e.g. - What could you do when you were five?

- I could swim.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Birds fly. They have wings.
a) can't b) can c) couldn't d) doesn't
- 2 Snails live in shells.
a) couldn't b) can c) can't d) doesn't
- 3 Snails move quickly.
a) can't b) are c) do d) can
- 4 Babies drive a car.
a) do b) could c) can d) can't
- 5 Bats can upside down on trees.
a) sleeps b) sleep c) sleeping d) slept
- 6 I can basketball.
a) play b) played c) playing d) plays
- 7 Can lions very fast?
a) run b) runs c) running d) ran
- 8 play tennis?
a) You couldn't b) You can't c) You can d) Can you
- 9 Parrots can
a) fly b) flies c) flying d) flew
- 10 I speak French when I lived in France.
a) can b) can't c) could d) doesn't
- 11 He take the bus, so he had to walk.
a) could b) couldn't c) can d) can't
- 12 you ride a bike when you were three?
a) Can b) Can't c) Aren't d) Could



- 13 I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- 14 Last year, he run very quickly, but now he can.
a) can't b) could c) couldn't d) can
- 15 you play the piano when you were a child?
a) Can b) Could c) Do d) Does
- 16 Sorry, I help you with your homework. I'm busy.
a) can b) can't c) could d) doesn't
- 17 Amr see the board, so he moved to the front.
a) can b) can't c) couldn't d) could
- 18 Kangaroos jump very high.
a) can't b) couldn't c) can d) doesn't
- 19 I ride a bike when I was ten.
a) can b) could c) can't d) couldn't
- 20 I had a sore throat, so I talk.
a) can b) could c) couldn't d) doesn't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 I (**can't**) say anything in German last year.
- 2 Kangaroos (**can't**) jump very high.
- 3 Could Omar (**reading**) stories when he was seven?
- 4 Parrots (**can't**) fly.
- 5 Can you (**helps**) me with my homework?

Adjectives ending in "-ed" and "-ing"

We add (ed or ing) to a verb to make an adjective.

نضيف للفعل "ed" أو "ing" لتكون صفة.

An adjective that ends in (-ing) describes (what a thing is like).

الصفة التي تنتهي بـ (-ing) تصف (كيف يبدو الشيء).

e.g. - English is interesting!

- The film is exciting.

An adjective that ends in (-ed) describes (how a person feels about something).

الصفة التي تنتهي بـ (-ed) تصف (ما يشعر به الشخص تجاه شيء ما).

e.g. - I'm very interested in history.

- He is so excited.

Note:

If the verb ends in (-e) we take off the (-e) and add (-ed) or (-ing).

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (-e) نحذف (-e) ونضيف له (-ed) أو (-ing).

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 I was so with that movie.

- a) boring b) bored c) annoying d) amazing

2 History is so

- a) interesting b) interested c) bored d) tired

3 That movie was so

- a) bored b) boring c) tired d) interested

4 He is very in history.

- a) interested b) interesting c) interest d) interests



- 5 I am very I want to sleep.
a) tiring b) boring c) tired d) interesting
- 6 The bay view is from the boat.
a) amazing b) amazed c) annoyed d) bored
- 7 She was very when she saw her presents.
a) surprising b) surprised c) annoying d) boring
- 8 This way is very
a) tired b) tiring c) excited d) amazed
- 9 They are in computer studies.
a) interested b) interest c) boring d) amazing
- 10 This party is
a) annoyed b) surprising c) surprised d) amazed

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 I was so (**boring**) with that play.
- 2 That movie was so (**bored**).
- 3 Math is so (**interested**).
- 4 He is very (**interesting**) in history.
- 5 She is very (**tiring**).
- 6 Is the film (**amaze**) or not?
- 7 I was (**surprise**) to see my old friends.
- 8 My friends are so (**excite**).

Imperative صيغة الأمر

Usage: الاستخدام

- We use imperatives to tell someone to do or not to do something.

- نستخدم صيغة الأمر لتخبر شخصاً ما أن يفعل أو لا يفعل شيء ما.

e.g. - Stand up.

- Don't run.

Form: التكوين

- To make the affirmative imperatives, use the "infinitive" without "to".

- لتكوين الأمر المثبت استخدم مصدر الفعل بدون "to".

باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل (inf.)

e.g. - Open the door, please.

- Please, pick up that trash.

- To make negative imperatives, use "don't + infinitive" without "to".

- لتكوين الأمر المنفي استخدم (don't + المصدر) بدون "to".

Don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

e.g. - Don't eat in the library, please.

- Don't waste your time.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 your book on the shelf.

a) Puts b) Put c) Putting d) To put

- 2 shout. Speak quietly.

a) Don't b) Didn't c) Doesn't d) Do

- 3 fruits and vegetables to stay healthy.

a) Doesn't eat b) Didn't eat c) Eats d) Eat

- 4 your time doing unimportant things.
a) Doesn't spend b) Don't spend c) Spend d) Spends
- 5 Please, your answer in short sentences.
a) writing b) wrote c) write d) writes
- 6 Stop making noise and to me, please.
a) listen b) listens c) not listen d) listening
- 7 You're late. up or you'll miss the train.
a) Hurries b) Hurry c) Hurried d) Hurrying
- 8 Don't to bring your swimming shorts.
a) forget b) forgetting c) forgets d) forgot
- 9 your jacket, please.
a) Wears b) Wearing c) Wore d) Wear
- 10 Come and lunch with us.
a) has b) had c) have d) having
- 11 Don't unkind to your friends.
a) be b) being c) been d) was
- 12 tell anyone your password.
a) Didn't b) Doesn't c) Don't d) Doing
- 13 the environment clean.
a) Keep b) Keeping c) Keeps d) Kept
- 14 Don't up the flowers.
a) pick b) picked c) picking d) picks
- 15 come late or you will miss the lesson.
a) Doesn't b) Don't c) Didn't d) Doing

2 Rewrite the rules with a suitable imperative form.

أعد كتابة التعليمات مستخدماً صيغة الأمر المناسبة.

- 1 You should not eat in the library.
- 2 You have to bring your book back in two weeks.
- 3 You cannot use your mobile phone here.
- 4 You need to drink your water outside.
- 5 You shouldn't come late.
- 6 You shouldn't tell anyone your password.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 (Doesn't) sleep in class.
- 2 (Eats) healthy food.
- 3 Don't (shouts) in class.
- 4 (Listening) carefully to your teacher.
- 5 (Didn't) come late.
- 6 Don't (swimming) here.



Prepositions of Time

حروف جر الزمان

in**on****at**

in months شهور
 seasons فصول السنة
 years سنين

in the morning صباحاً
 the afternoon بعد الظهر
 the evening مساءً

e.g. Grandma was born **in** 1962. - I go to Alex **in** summer.

e.g. It was warm **in** October. - He is active **in** the morning.

e.g. They arrived **in** the afternoon.

on days of the week أيام الأسبوع On Saturday.
 special days أيام مخصوصة On my birthday.
 specific dates تواريخ محددة On June 26th.

e.g. I go swimming **on** Mondays.

e.g. I am having a party **on** my birthday.

e.g. I was born **on** July 6th 2010.

at times الوقت (ساعة)
 night ليلاً
 lunchtime وقت الغداء

e.g. Our plane lands **at** 8 pm.

e.g. I go to bed **at** night.

e.g. We play basketball **at** lunchtime.



1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Dad is a baker. He works..... the morning.
a) in b) on c) at d) to
- 2 We go to the club Saturdays.
a) in b) at c) of d) on
- 3 Does our next class start 2 pm?
a) in b) at c) of d) on
- 4 Grandma was born 1962.
a) on b) in c) of d) to
- 5 Sara's birthday is December 4th.
a) to b) of c) in d) on
- 6 Monday, we arrived in Amman.
a) Of b) To c) On d) At
- 7 the afternoon, we have lunch.
a) To b) In c) On d) At
- 8 Amman is a busy city night.
a) on b) at c) in d) of
- 9 It was warm..... October.
a) in b) on c) at d) of
- 10 It's cold winter.
a) on b) in c) at d) to



- 11 We play basketball lunchtime.
a) in b) on c) at d) of
- 12 I was born 2010.
a) in b) to c) at d) of
- 13 We visit our cousins June.
a) in b) with c) at d) on
- 14 the weekend, I visit my grandma.
a) In b) Of c) By d) On
- 15 Is your birthday Friday?
a) in b) on c) at d) of
- 16 Our flight lands the evening.
a) of b) at c) on d) in
- 17 We're flying to Morocco September 20th.
a) of b) on c) at d) in
- 18 Our school ends the summer.
a) on b) of c) at d) in
- 19 Our flight leaves 8 am.
a) in b) of c) at d) on
- 20 Her cousins usually visit her July.
a) at b) in c) on d) of

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 He goes to school (at) the morning.
- 2 I don't go to school (in) Fridays.
- 3 He was born (on) 2008.
- 4 I get up (in) six o'clock.

Unit (7)

HOMES IN EGYPT

Vocabulary

elevator	مصعد (أسانسيز)	closet	خزانة ملابس
cushion	وسادة	oven	فرن
balcony	شرفة (بلكونة)	armchair	كرسي بذراعين
television	تلفاز	shower	دش
sleeping area	منطقة النوم	roof	سطح
reed mat	حصيرة	gate	بوابة
pot	إثاء	blogging	التدوين
ecological	بيئي	Upside down house	المنزل المقلوب

Adjectives

unfriendly	غير ودود	uncomfortable	غير مريح	unlucky	غير محظوظ
unsafe	غير آمن	unhappy	حزين	unfair	غير عادل
annoying	مزعج	awesome	مدهش - مله	awful	فظيع
friendly	ودود	funny	مضحك - مفرح	interesting	شيق
boring	مل	brilliant	لامع - متألّق	cool	رائع - معتدل البرودة

Phonics

long (oo) /u:/		short (oo) /U/		long (ee) /i:/	
school	مدرسة	book	كتاب	sheep	خروف
roof	سطح	cook	يطهو	seed	بذرة
food	طعام	wood	خشب	queen	ملكة
noon	الظهيرة	wool	صوف	tree	شجرة
spoon	ملعقة	good	جيد	cheese	جبين

The Past Simple Tense - الزمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- ١- للتعبير عن شيء حدث ذات مرة فيما مضى.
- ٢- للتعبير عن شيء حدث عدة مرات في الماضي.
- ٣- للتعبير عن شيء ما كان حقيقياً لو لم يكن ما في الماضي.
- ٤- التعبيرات مع ago.

Form التكوين

The second form of the verb.

e.g. I **helped** my sister yesterday.

Negative النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. The people **didn't help** him with his work.

Questions

(Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر)?

e.g. Did you **visit** Ali yesterday? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q.W. + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر)?

e.g. When did you **meet** Heba?
- I **met** her two days ago.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	last	الماضي	in 2020	في عام ٢٠٢٠
ago	منذ	in the past	في الماضي	Once	ذات مرة



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 I like my
a) bathroom b) living room c) kitchen d) bedroom
- 2 I share my bedroom with my
a) sister b) father c) brother d) grandma
- 3 On the, there is my bed.
a) right b) left c) middle d) wall
- 4 On the wall, there are lots of posters of
a) people b) animals c) birds d) clocks

2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 I'm in primary
a) five b) four c) six d) three
- 2 My cooks breakfast.
a) mother b) father c) sister d) aunt
- 3 I have breakfast with my
a) friends b) family c) teachers d) aunts
- 4 I go to school by
a) train b) car c) bike d) bus



2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 We have a modern oven in the
a) balcony b) kitchen c) living room d) bathroom
- 2 That's very You ate everything and didn't leave any for us.
a) unhappy b) sad c) unfair d) dangerous
- 3 His cat died last week. He was very
a) happy b) unfair c) unhappy d) unsafe
- 4 Take the cake out of the
a) bed b) shower c) oven d) bathroom
- 5 The bricks helped Ancient Egyptians to keep their homes cool.
a) sand b) mud c) glass d) metal
- 6 It's to go down the street in the dark alone.
a) unhappy b) unlucky c) unfair d) unsafe
- 7 There are three bedrooms in our new
a) kitchen b) restaurant c) apartment d) school
- 8 Ancient Egyptians used to make their homes.
a) mud bricks b) water c) glass d) paper
- 9 There is a shower in the
a) living room b) bathroom c) bedroom d) kitchen
- 10 We put our clothes in the
a) oven b) kitchen c) cushion d) closet

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

small - loves - bedrooms - old - oven

Fareeda's family moved to a new apartment. She 1)
it. It's much bigger than the 2) one. The kitchen is
bigger and the 3) is more modern. They have three
4) and she shares a room with her sister.



Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

walls - Nile - tea - water - mud

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the
1) They used 2) for drinking, cooking and
washing. They also used 3) from the river to make bricks
for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong 4)



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The word "ancient" means very
a) new b) modern c) old d) big
- 2 The Ancient Egyptians used to cover the windows and doors.
a) papyrus b) curtains c) wood d) crops

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What did the Ancient Egyptians use to store their crops?
.....

- 4 Why did they cover windows and doors with papyrus?
.....



Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Kareem and Maha had a nice day. They went to the restaurant. Maha had a bowl of soup, spaghetti and meatballs and two glasses of orange juice. Kareem had two loaves of bread, three slices of pizza and a can of lemonade. Kareem and Maha love this restaurant because its food is the best in town.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Kareem and Maha had a nice
a) year b) day c) week d) month
- 2) Maha had a of soup.
a) slice b) loaf c) bowl d) can

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) How much lemonade did Kareem have?
- 4) Where did Kareem and Maha go?

5) Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

- 1) do - and - Where - live - Mohab - Ali - ?
.....
- 2) looks - unhappy, - He - mother - his - died - because - .
.....
- 3) unlucky - because - the bus - He's - very - missed - he - .
.....
- 4) met - He - new - friends - some - yesterday - .
.....
- 5) did - people - What - build - to - homes - use - their - ?
.....
- 6) blogging - I - about - things - like - different - .
.....
- 7) is - also - It - ecological - very - .
.....
- 8) about - What - bedroom - the - new - ?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 He (travel) all over Egypt last summer.
- 2 It (doesn't) rain yesterday.
- 3 His father (goes) to Aswan last week.
- 4 I didn't (meets) my friend two years ago.
- 5 Did you (visited) her house?
- 6 I visited her house when I (be) five.
- 7 (In) the left of the room, there is my bed.
- 8 (At) the wall, there are a lot of posters.
- 9 (On) the middle of the room, there's a closet.
- 10 My cousin came to visit us (now).

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- 1 what did people use to build their homes
- 2 they used mud bricks
- 3 welcome to my new apartment come in

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Homes in Ancient Egypt

Guiding words:

(build - river - mud - bricks - cool - paint - white - reed mats - sit - papyrus - cover)

Write a paragraph of about (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Your new apartment

Guiding words:

(new apartment - bigger - kitchen - oven - living room - TV - bedrooms)

Unit (8)

AT THE DOCTOR'S

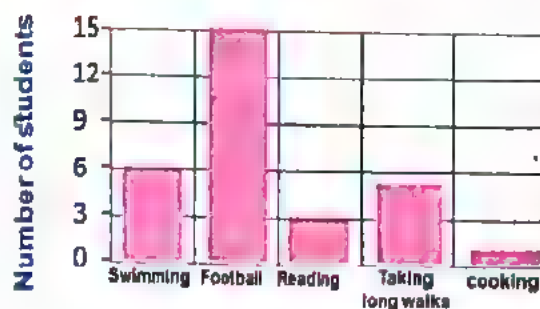
illness	مرض	a cough	سعال / كحة	a cold	برد
toothache	ألم في الأسنان	stomachache	ألم في المعدة	headache	صداع
dentist	طبيب الأسنان	pills	أقراص الدواء	heal	يلتئم
shoulder	كتف	injection	حقنة طبية	relatives	أقارب
ankle	كاحل القدم	patient	مريض	expert	خبير
hospital	مستشفى	unwell	مريض / ليس بخير	honey	عسل
bandage	ضمادة	staff	فريق عمل	medicine	دواء
earache	ألم في الأذن	corridor	ممر / طرفة	lemon	ليمون
helpful	متعاون	sunscreen	كريم واقٍ من الشمس	healthy	صحي
backache	ألم في الظهر	a sore throat	التهاب الحلق	cut	جرح

Pronunciation

fan	leaf	life	ferry	few	safe
van	leave	live	very	view	save

Bar charts التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة

Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1



Verb to "have" in the present simple

- We use (have) to talk about illness.

نستخدم الفعل (have) بمعنى (لديه / عنده / مصاب) مع المرض.

Form التكوين

Subject + (have / has)

e.g. I **have** a headache.

Negative النفي

Subject + (don't have / doesn't have)

e.g. I **don't have** a sore throat.

Question السؤال

(Yes / No) question:

Do / Does + subject + have ...?

e.g. Do you **have** a headache? - Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

Wh- question:

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + have ...?

e.g. What do you **have**?

e.g. What does she **have**?

Opposite Prefixes بادئات تعطي عكس المعنى

un	well	بخير	unwell	غير معافى
	usual	عادي	unusual	غير عادي
ir	responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
	regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
im	possible	ممكن	impossible	مستحيل
	polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
il	legal	قانوني	illegal	غير قانوني



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Bangalore is a city in southern _____.
a) America b) France c) India d) England
- 2 The hospital treats _____ from all over the country.
a) patients b) kids c) children d) women
- 3 With every patient, there're about _____ family members.
a) five b) six c) ten d) four
- 4 It's unusual for a sick person to go to the _____ alone.
a) school b) hospital c) park d) restaurant

2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 My school has got twenty _____.
a) classrooms b) playgrounds c) corridors d) rooms
- 2 There are _____ laboratories in my school.
a) twenty b) two c) three d) four
- 3 We have a big _____ at the corridor.
a) laboratory b) classroom c) library d) room
- 4 The library is _____ to the computer room.
a) in b) on c) behind d) next



2) Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1) make honey.
a) Birds b) Monkeys c) Bees d) Worms
- 2) A is an injury that damages your skin.
a) wound b) wind c) knee d) knot
- 3) We use the prefix "....." to give the opposite of "possible".
a) il- b) ir- c) un- d) im-
- 4) Ali is a responsible person, but Samy is an one.
a) kind b) unkind c) unfit d) irresponsible
- 5) When your head hurts, you have a / an
a) cold b) earache c) backache d) headache
- 6) I ate something bad. I have a
a) stomachache b) backache c) cold d) flu
- 7) He is getting better because the doctor gave him some
a) sweets b) sunburn c) medicine d) wound
- 8) My grandma put a on my knee cut.
a) bandage b) scissors c) sunscreen d) pills
- 9) The opposite of "usual" is
a) unfit b) unkind c) unusual d) usually
- 10) He has a toothache. He should go to the
a) doctor b) dentist c) teacher d) baker

3) Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

bacteria - wounds - sweet - treatment - Scientists

Honey is not only a food. It's is also used as a 1) for some injures and illnesses. It was first used to treat 2) by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. 3) know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill 4)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

experts - exercising - water - body - hot

It is really important to stay healthy. It's very important to drink plenty of 1) This keeps your 2) working well. It's especially important if it's a very 3) day or if your're 4)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي واجب عن الاسئلة.

Rania is my best friend. She was born in 2006. She is a student at Ahmed Orabi School. There are thirty-five students in her class. Her favourite subjects are science and maths. She isn't good at social studies. Her school is near so she walks to school. She has got six lessons a day.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Rania has lessons a day.
a) seven b) six c) five d) four
- 2 She goes to school
a) by bus b) by car c) on foot d) by bike

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What subject isn't Raina good at?

- 4 What are Rania's favorite subjects?



Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Ahmed. I have a friend from France. His name is Bill. He sent me a letter yesterday. He's coming to Egypt for a short holiday. I will meet him at the airport. I will take him to the Pyramids and the Cairo Tower. I'm sure he will enjoy them very much.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Bill is coming to Egypt
 a) by bike b) by plane c) by car d) on foot
- 2) Bill is
 a) Egyptian b) English c) French d) American

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1) What does the underlined word "them" refer to?
- 2) Why is Bill coming to Egypt?

C) Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

- 1) throat - Do - a - you - sore - have - ?

- 2) to - How - go - school - does - Eman - ?

- 3) is - important - Which - most - food - the - ?

- 4) my - I - last - cut - week - knee - .

- 5) you - Can - club - go - the - to - ?

- 6) yesterday - ate - bad - something - I .

- 7) a headache - I - sore throat - and - have - a - .

- 8) dentist - go to - He - the - should

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- ✓ All my sisters (has) a cold.
- ✓ He (don't) have a toothache.
- ✓ Ghada (have) an earache.
- ✓ I (has) a stomachache.
- ✓ They doesn't have a toothache.
- ✓ Do you (has) a cold?
- ✓ Do she have a sore throat?
- ✓ He speaks rudely. He is (polite).
- ✓ Tarek is sad. He is (happy).
- ✓ Does Toka (has) a cold?

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

✓ i have a toothache

✓ does he have a cold

✓ amr has an earache from swimming

30

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Healthy food

(fresh fruit vegetables do sports - healthy - snacks - fizzy)

30

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

The importance of water

(important comes fresh - salt - drinking - washing - watering plants - save)

MY FAVORITE ANIMAL

Animals and

kangaroo	كنغر bat	خفاش penguin	طائر البطريق
panda	باندا lion	أسد dolphin	دولفين
snail	حلزون parrot	ببغاء dugong	حيوان الأطوم

Trees

trunk	جذع / ساق save	بنقلد branch	فرع / غصن
nuts	مكسرات shelter	ماوى breeze	نسيم
rest	راحة exhausted	فتعب useless	عديم الفائدة
ungrateful	جاحد / ناكر الجميل comfortable	مريح shade	ظل

Suffix (er)

teacher	معلم climb	متسلق
footballer	لاعب كرة قدم farm	فلاح
reader	قارى travel	مسافر

Phonics

vet	violin	est	et
volcano	vest	hale	atermelon
vase	village	wheel	ater

Language

- ⊖ I can play tennis.
- ⊕ She could speak English.
- ⊖ I'm very interested in history.
- ⊕ History is so interesting.



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 Yesterday, Toka went to a park.

- a) amusement b) dream c) wildlife d) music

2 Toka went there with her

- a) family b) friends c) aunts d) uncles

3 They saw lots of different

- a) books b) rides c) animals d) cars

4 Toka's favorite birds are the

- a) doves b) sparrows c) bats d) parrots

2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 Hanin went to

- a) London b) Cairo c) Alexandria d) Hurghada

2 Hanin went to Hurghada by

- a) bus b) train c) plane d) bike

3 She swam and played

- a) tennis b) squash c) chess d) basketball

4 Hanin was

- a) unhappy b) sad c) depressed d) happy



2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Pandas eat
a) spaghetti b) bamboo c) wheat d) rice
- 2 My cousin is a very good He reads about 20 books a year.
a) farmer b) reader c) climber d) footballer
- 3 Mr Ahmed is a great He makes the lesson clear.
a) teacher b) farmer c) climber d) reader
- 4 He worked all day so he was
a) relaxed b) exhausted c) rested d) relaxing
- 5 A breeze is a little
a) storm b) wave c) cloud d) wind
- 6 When something is, we don't want to use it.
a) useful b) simple c) useless d) easy
- 7 The trees give us shelter and
a) water b) meat c) shade d) honey
- 8 A meeting point is somewhere where people
a) leave b) sleep c) eat d) meet
- 9 Ahmed was in languages.
a) interested b) amazing c) interesting d) boring
- 10 The match was I liked it.
a) excited b) exciting c) bored d) amazed

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

parrots - enjoyed - park - interesting - lions

Yesterday, Ramez went to a wildlife 1) with his family. He 2) it very much. They saw lots of different animals like 3), kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the 4)

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

This week we're talking a lot about 1) animals at school. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the 2) Its nickname is the 3) It eats grass from the 4)

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Bob and Lili are giant pandas. When giant pandas are born, they weigh 80 to 140 grams. Adults usually weigh 80 to 125 kilos. Giant pandas eat bamboo. They walk and run on all four legs. They can climb trees and swim. Giant pandas live in the mountains of China. Around 700 to 1000 pandas are alive today.

Choose the correct answer

- ✓ Giant pandas eat
 fish bamboo meat fruit
- ✓ Giant pandas live in the of China.
 mountains bamboo parks school

Answer the following questions

- ✓ What are Bob and Lili?
- ✓ How do pandas walk and run?

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Answer the following questions.**

- Put the words in the correct column.**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

- ### AL-BAHER - Connect (5)

Final Revision

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

أهرا واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 Snails can't (moves) quickly.
- 2 Pandas (can) drive a car.
- 3 I (can) speak French when I lived in France.
- 4 Could you (rides) a bike when you were there?
- 5 He couldn't read when he (be) one.
- 6 Last year, he (can't) run very quickly.
- 7 Can you (playing) tennis?
- 8 What could you (did)?
- 9 That story is very (bored).
- 10 That long walk was very (tired).

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- 1 farouk is a farmer from aswan.
- 2 why are trees important for animals
- 3 Mazen sent an email to omar
- 4 i would like to be a teacher

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

A school trip

Guiding words:

(zoo - animals - school bus - happy)

9 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Unusual animal

Guiding words:

(dugong - sea cow - grass - sea bed)

LET'S VISIT EGYPT

Places in a city

museum	متحف	bank	بنك	factory	مصنع
restaurant	مطعم	library	مكتبة	monument	أثر
market	سوق	square	ميدان	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
beach	شاطئ	station	محطة	park	منطقة خضراء عامة

Directions

Go straight	سير بخط مستقيم	Turn left	أنتصب يساراً
Turn right	أنتصب يميناً	Cross the road	أعبر الطريق

Phonics

/ʃoʊ/	/eɪt/	/ɔɪ/	/aɪt/
show	eight	toy	right
go	make	boy	night
grow	bake	enjoy	write

Language

- Come here, Lama!
- Don't be late tomorrow.
- Go to the end of the street and turn right.

Math

- What's $88+90+27$?
- It's around 200.



Activities



Choose the correct answer.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1) In our perfect town, there is a big

- a) park b) restaurant c) zoo d) hotel

2) We can go there every after classes.

- a) afternoon b) morning c) evening d) night

3) We can help feed the

- a) people b) kids c) children d) animals

4) It's really in our town.

- a) cold b) hot c) snowy d) rainy



Choose the correct answer.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1) Egypt is in

- a) Asia b) Europe c) America d) Africa

2) Cairo is the city in Egypt.

- a) smallest b) shortest c) biggest d) longest

3) The River Nile is the river in the world.

- a) biggest b) smallest c) shortest d) longest

4) Tourists like visiting Egypt in the

- a) winter b) summer c) spring d) fall



Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1) I'm vacation here.
a) in b) on c) at d) into
- 2) We ages walking around the city.
a) make b) do c) spend d) try
- 3) We go to the to borrow or read books.
a) library b) hotel c) bank d) beach
- 4) Molokhia and rice are from the local Egyptian
a) restaurant b) cuisine c) museum d) factory
- 5) We can keep our money safely at the
a) library b) zoo c) bank d) park
- 6) The man is He speaks rudely.
a) kind b) polite c) foolish d) nice
- 7) Look! There are trees in the garden.
a) red b) black c) gray d) green
- 8) Let's a cake for my birthday.
a) bake b) grow c) ache d) write
- 9) Gabi didn't the road.
a) read b) write c) recognized d) sit
- 10) We catch the train from the
a) zoo b) station c) school d) park

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

park - trees - food - yellow - picnics

There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious

1), like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables.

There is a big 2) with lots of 3) So we can go for family 4) in the shade.

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

peach - beach - lake - long - cool

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the 1) so you can visit the 2) sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 km 3) There is a large green 4) right in the middle of the city.

**4 Read the following text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My friend Ramy was having a good time in Alexandria with his family. They visited Alexandria Library last Friday. They spent the morning on the beach swimming and playing. It was fun! In the afternoon, they went to a film studio. They watched the actors rehearse and took a photo with Adel Emam. In the evening they went to have dinner at a nice restaurant near the beach. The food was very delicious. They went home late.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- ① Ramy was having a good time in
 a) Luxor b) Cairo c) Alexandria d) Aswan
- ② Last Friday, they visited Alexandria
 a) Library b) Temple c) Citadel d) Museum

B) Answer the following questions.

③ Who did Ramy go with?

.....

④ When did Ramy go to a film studio?

.....



Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I am Kareem. I am from Mansoura. It's a nice city. It is the capital of Dakahlia. It has lots of places to visit. It has many beautiful parks and gardens, a theatre, cinemas and some sports clubs. On Fridays, I go to the club to play football. Sometimes, I go on a boat trip on the Nile. Mansoura has over 20 restaurants. It also has a good museum. Mansoura is called "The bride of the Nile".

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Mansoura is a nice
a) village b) country c) city d) park
- 2) Mansoura has over restaurants.
a) twenty b) one c) forty d) thirty

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Does Kareem go on a boat trip?
- 4) What is Mansoura called?

5) Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1) 's - a - big - There - my - in - station - town - .

2) farmer - vegetables - Does - grow - the - ?

3) could - land - fly - The - over - ibis - the - .

4) late - Don't - again - come - .

5) have - us - lunch - Come - with - and - .

6) time - have - a - We'll - great .

7) do - How - get - school - you - to - ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 (Choosing) a good book to read.
- 2 Don't (closes) the window.
- 3 (Didn't) eat in the library.
- 4 (Keeps) the environment clean.
- 5 (Doesn't) write in the book.
- 6 How (does) I get to the station?
- 7 Where (are) the post office?
- 8 How do I (gets) to the museum from here?
- 9 (Crossing) the road.
- 10 (Are) there a library near here?

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1 jens likes drinking tea in the hotel

2 it's around the zoo

3 how much will ten lemons be

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Alexandria

Guiding words:

(exciting - beach - restaurant - museum)

Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

New Alamein

Guiding words:

(on the beach - 14 kms - international park - fascinating - history - treasures)

Unit (10)

VACATIONS



Vocabulary

المفردات

desert	صحراء	land	يتمتع / المدينة
metal	معادن	market place	مكان التسوق
hotel	فندق	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
camera	كاميرا	the theme park	ورتل
passport	جواز سفر	ticket	تذكرة
sunglasses	نظارة شمسية	museum	متحف
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	tourist	سائح
traditional	تقليدي	day trip	رحلة بيوم
wander	يتجول	handicrafts	شغل يدوي
stall	كشك	bench	مقعد
diary	سجل	destination	جهة مقصودة
picnic	برقعة	Al-Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر

Phonics صوتيات

(th)	/θ/	(th)	/ð/
mouth	thing	father	they
south	Thursday	mother	this
birthday	think	leather	these

Language

- I go swimming **on Mondays**.
- We play basketball **at lunchtime**.
- We visit our cousins in **June**.



Activities



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.



On _____, we arrived in Amman.

- a) Sunday b) Monday c) Tuesday d) Friday



The _____ landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon.

- a) flight b) trip c) voyage d) journey



It was so _____ in October.

- a) hot b) rainy c) snowy d) warm



Our room in the hotel was very _____.

- a) uncomfortable b) unlucky c) comfortable d) tiring



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.



I love anything to do with _____.

- a) science b) maths c) history d) English



I always go to the _____ at home.

- a) museum b) park c) restaurant d) zoo



The bus ride wasn't _____.

- a) good b) bad c) kind d) nice



It took an/a _____ to reach our destination.

- a) day b) week c) hour d) half an hour

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 You need a to travel to a different country.
a) passport b) hotel c) park d) beach
- 2 You put your clothes and other things in a when you travel.
a) ticket b) passport c) suitcase d) table
- 3 I always take my so I can take photos.
a) ticket b) camera c) sunglasses d) passport
- 4 I write daily in my
a) passport b) ticket c) diary d) suitcase
- 5 An triangle has three equal sides.
a) equilateral b) right angle c) isosceles d) scalene
- 6 A right angle triangle has one angle that measures
a) 80° b) 90° c) 100° d) 180°
- 7 Be careful! That snake is
a) active b) fame c) poison d) poisonous
- 8 Ali swims and runs. He's very
a) poisonous b) expensive c) active d) enormous
- 9 You can make sand castles and swim in the
a) peach b) beach c) suitcase d) hotel
- 10 We have fun and go on different rides at the
a) theme park b) hotel c) beach d) zoo

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

passport - cold - hot - plane - suitcase

Reem is going on vacation. She is traveling to Canada by

- 1) Today, she is packing her 2)
She is taking her 3) It can be 4) there,
so she is packing her sweater.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

passport - destination - history - museum - bus

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with

- 1) I always go to the 2) at home. The
3) ride wasn't bad. It only took an hour to reach our
4)

Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm having a real adventure here in the desert. We arrived on the weekend and set up our tent. It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on sand at night. We sit around a fire. It gets really cold here at night. We sing songs and eat delicious food which we cook on the fire. You can see a million stars. It's beautiful.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The writer is having a real adventure in the
a) village b) city c) town d) desert
- 2 The writer sleeps in a
a) tent b) hotel c) bed d) sofa

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 How do they cook food?

- 4 Is it easy to sleep in a tent on sand?



Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

On the first day at school, Ahmed met his friends. They enjoyed talking about their summer vacation. Everyone talked about what he did on vacation. They ran, played, laughed and had their breakfast at the school playground. Their teachers were very kind.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- ① The teachers were very _____.
a) bad b) happy c) kind d) unhappy
- ② Ahmed had his breakfast at the school _____.
a) playground b) library c) science lab d) class

B) Answer the following questions.

- ③ Who did Ahmed meet at school? _____
- ④ What did they enjoy? _____

5) Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- ① is - a - Singapore - city - wonderful - .
- ② would - I - visit - Zambia - like - to - .
- ③ are - on - They - vacation - going - .
- ④ go - to - club - Saturdays - We - the - on - .
- ⑤ country - like - would - What - visit - you - to - ?
- ⑥ watch - is - His - expensive - very - .
- ⑦ very - She - famous - is - .
- ⑧ you - Do - go - want - on - to - vacation - ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 We flew to Alexandria (in) Monday.
- 2 Our flight leaves (on) 8 am .
- 3 Many people leave the city (at) the summer.
- 4 We are going to the park (on) the afternoon.
- 5 Her cousins usually visit her (on) July.
- 6 We go to the club (in) Saturdays.
- 7 Grandma was born (at) 1962.
- 8 Reem's birthday is (at) December 4th.
- 9 (In) Wednesday, I play football after school.
- 10 We play basketball (in) lunchtime.

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1 Why did seleem feel better at the end

2 reem's birthday is on december 4th.

3 our flight lands in the evening

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

My perfect vacation

Guiding words:

(last summer - beach - snorkelling - race - beach buggies -
hotel - comfortable - enjoyed)

Write a paragraph of about (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Al - Azhar Park

Guiding words:

(Cairo - grass - trees - plants - birds - beautiful - show)

The Performance Task

School :

Name :

Class :

Date :

"Ancient Egyptian Homes"

Ancient Egyptians have a great history. They were very clever architects.

Write about

- 1) Where did they build their homes?
- 2) What did they use to build their homes? Why?
- 3) What was inside the home?
- 4) How about the furniture?

--	--



School :

Name :

Class :

Date :

"Staying healthy"

Health is very dear. It's better than money.

Write about

- 1) Things we should do to stay healthy.
- 2) Things we shouldn't do to stay healthy.

--	--

School :

Name :

Class :

Date :

"Your favorite animal"

You have a pet in your house. You want to introduce it to your classmates.

Write about

- 1) The name of the animal.
- 2) Its description.
- 3) The food you feed it.
- 4) The things it can do.



School :

Name :

Class :

Date :

"Let's visit Egypt"

Egypt is a beautiful country. It's full of history and monuments
Invite a friend to visit it.

Write about

- 1) The places he / she can visit.
- 2) The things he / she can see and do.
- 3) The weather.
- 4) The Ancient Egyptians.

--	--

School :

Name :

Class :

Date :

"Diary entry"

You write about a special day in your life.
Write your diary entry.

Write about

- 1) Write the date.
- 2) Start with "Dear Diary".
- 3) Describe the places and events.
- 4) Say how you felt.

--	--



School :

Name :

Class :

Date :

Honey

Honey is very useful. People use it for many things.

Write about

- 1) Which insect makes honey?
- 2) What do people use it for?
- 3) Why do people like it?

--	--

Exam (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 I had a lovely day in
a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) London d) Luxor
- 2 I traveled with my mom to see my
a) aunt b) uncle c) grandma d) grandpa
- 3 When we arrived, we rushed straight to my aunt's
a) restaurant b) park c) garden d) house
- 4 My aunt gave us a delicious
a) dinner b) breakfast c) lunch d) snack

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 We go to the when we have a toothache.
a) teacher b) dentist c) engineer d) vet
- 2 We sleep in the
a) living room b) bathroom c) kitchen d) bedroom
- 3 The has a shell but it doesn't have legs or arms.
a) snail b) penguin c) panda d) parrot
- 4 My uncle works in a big food
a) museum b) park c) factory d) water park

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

share - old - love - bedrooms - kitchen

I moved to a new apartment with my family. I 1) it.
It's much bigger than our 2) apartment. The 3) is
bigger and the oven is more modern. We have three 4) now.

**4) Read the following text and answer the questions.**

Whales are animals that live in the ocean. The blue whales are the biggest animals on Earth. They eat fish, seals and even other whales. Some whales have teeth to help them eat. They breathe air through a hole in the top of their head. They can live a long time even up to 90 years old. Whales don't sleep like people, but instead they take quick naps.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Whales breathe air through a hole in the top of their
a) flippers b) heads c) gills d) bones
- 2 The general idea of the text is about
a) sharks b) gold fish c) whales d) dolphins

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What do whales eat?
- 4 How do whales sleep?

5) Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- 1 you - an - Do - have - earache - ?
- 2 school - play - I - On Wednesdays - football - after - .

6) Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 The people didn't (helped) him with his work.
- 2 Amir (have) a stomachache.

7) Punctuate the following.

- 1 my favorite unusual animal is the dugong

8) Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding words: A school trip to Alexandria

(friends - school bus)

Exam (2)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1 Omar lives in a house.

- a) small b) big c) tall d) long

2 He lives with his and his sister Hana.

- a) parents b) friends c) uncles d) aunts

3 His bedroom is white and

- a) black b) yellow c) brown d) blue

4 In the middle, there's a big

- a) bed b) sofa c) closet d) oven

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 I put lots of of animals on the wall.

- a) tools b) posters c) roofs d) boxes

2 A lives in Australia and jump on two legs.

- a) kangaroo b) penguin c) lion d) bat

3 We put our clothes in a when we travel.

- a) suitcase b) passport c) beach d) camera

4 My uncle is a professional He can climb a mountain.

- a) climbing b) climber c) climbs d) climbed

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

honey - earache - ankle - come - football

Fares didn't have a good day at the club today. Five people didn't 1) to the club today. His friend Tarek hurt his 2) at 3) practice last night. Amr has an 4) from swimming. Three of his friends have a cold.



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Alexandria is really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here. It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets and museums. There's even a big beach. Lily is visiting Alexandria from Germany. She has been to many museums since her first day in Alexandria. She has been to Alexandria Library too. She likes sitting on the roof garden of her hotel drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea, and enjoying chatting to other people.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Lily is
 a) Egyptian b) German c) French d) Italian
- 2 Lily has been to Alexandria
 a) Hotel b) Museum c) Beach d) Library

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Summarize the text in one sentence.
- 4 What does Lily like doing?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1 and - Nagwa - Soha - good - swimmers - are - .

2 near - Is - a library - here - there - , please - ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 (Wearing) a jacket when it is cold.
- 2 He didn't (played) tennis yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following.

hospitals in India are often crowded

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding words:

Homes in Ancient Egypt

(Nile - mud bricks - white)

Exam (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 To stay we should exercise every day.
a) awake b) asleep c) healthy d) unhealthy
- 2 We need to sleep for eight or nine at night.
a) days b) weeks c) months d) hours
- 3 We should spend time with our
a) teachers b) friends c) doctors d) pets
- 4 We should have a balanced
a) gym b) diet c) work d) sleep

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 make honey which is the sweetest substance on Earth.
a) Cows b) Birds c) Bees d) Bacteria
- 2 A is a little wind.
a) rain b) breeze c) storm d) lighting
- 3 A meeting point is a place where people
a) meet b) leave c) play d) run
- 4 We stay in a when we are on vacation.
a) hotel b) monument c) beach d) ride

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

medicine - hospital - active - nurses - park

Uncle Ali is a doctor. He is very 1) and helpful. He works in a 2) Some 3) help him with his work. He tells his patients to take 4)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Ahmed. I went to the zoo yesterday. I went with my family. I went with my father, my mother and my two sisters. We went there by bus. We saw a lot of animals. We saw monkeys, lions and elephants. Some people were unfriendly to the animals so my dad was angry. We had lunch at the zoo. We went home in the afternoon. I was very happy.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 "Unfriendly" means
 a) sad b) tall c) not kind d) lucky
- 2 The text is about visiting the
 a) school b) garden c) park d) zoo

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Where did Ahmed go yesterday?
- 4 How did Ahmed feel about the trip?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- 1 sister - a room - I - with - my - share - .
- 2 should - You - food - healthy - eat - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 (Didn't) ride your bike in the house.
- 2 Ali (can) run fast and he won the race.

7 Punctuate the following.

- 1 where is the kitchen

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding words:

(My home)

(rooms - furniture)

Exam (4)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 Rahma is years old.
a) 11 b) 12 c) 10 d) 13
- 2 She loves her
a) bedroom b) bathroom c) kitchen d) living room
- 3 She can do her and relax in the bedroom.
a) housework b) chores c) activities d) homework
- 4 She most of time in the bedroom.
a) runs b) waits c) spends d) plays

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 You need the when you travel to a different country.
a) suitcase b) passport c) hotel d) beach
- 2 We will take a boat trip on the River Nile.
a) relaxing b) fixing c) boring d) tiring
- 3 We have a new which is much easier to cook in.
a) television b) oven c) closet d) shower
- 4 My mother cooks food in the
a) kitchen b) living room c) balcony d) bathroom

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

hot - picnic - sells - fruit - park

In my perfect town, there's a wonderful market that

- 1) all kinds of food like fresh bread, fresh 2)
and vegetables. There's a big 3) with lots of green
trees, so we can go for a family 4)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In Ancient Egypt many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks which made very strong walls. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped them to do this.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Ancient Egyptians made their homes the Nile.
a) far b) in c) under d) near
- 2 Ancient Egyptians made their homes from
a) mud bricks b) wood c) straw d) reed

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 How did mud bricks help Ancient Egyptians?
- 4 What is the general idea of the text?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- 1 should - food - You - healthy - eat - .
- 2 is - matter - What - the - , Ahmed - ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 Fatma doesn't (has) a cold.
- 2 He (can't) speak German when he was three.

7 Punctuate the following.

- 1 do you have a cold

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding words:

My new apartment

(bigger - living room - kitchen - bedroom) - ---

Exam (5)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 Ahmed went to
a) Luxor b) Cairo c) London d) Alexandria
- 2 Ahmed went with his
a) friends b) family c) aunts d) uncles
- 3 They stayed in a
a) hotel b) park c) factory d) museum
- 4 They had at the hotel.
a) breakfast b) dinner c) lunch d) snack

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 There are two bedrooms in my
a) school b) lake c) kitchen d) apartment
- 2 The phone is very Can we buy a cheaper one?
a) expensive b) expense c) poison d) poisonous
- 3 The library is the place where we can or read books.
a) buy b) live c) borrow d) eat
- 4 A is somewhere to stay when you are on vacation.
a) suitcase b) bank c) factory d) hotel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

family - hot - picnic - Park - football

Last week, I went to Al-Azhar 1) I went with my
2) My mom made a 3) We sat under a big
tree and on the grass and enjoyed the food. I played 4)
with my brother.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It's important to eat healthy food like fruit and vegetables and have a balanced diet. There are lots of that we can do to look after our health. You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport is a good way to exercise. It's important to get enough sleep so go to bed early. You should sleep about eight hours every night, Spending time with your family and friends is great.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 We should eat food like vegetables and fruit.
a) healthy b) bad c) wrong d) grows
- 2 It's good for you to do some to be fit.
a) housework b) work c) homework d) exercise

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Why is it important to go to bed early?
- 4 Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- 1 Egyptians - did - How - ancient - build - their - homes - ?
- 2 the club - at - We - spend - decided to - time - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 (Does) you have an earache?
- 2 When I was six, I (can) read and write.

7 Punctuate the following.

- 1 what are you going to play

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding elements:

Al-Azhar Park

(When did you go there? - What did you do?)

Exam (6)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 I like having for breakfast.
a) eggs b) cheese c) bread d) honey
- 2 Honey is the substance on Earth.
a) sweetest b) nicest c) finest d) smallest
- 3 Some types of honey can kill
a) mice b) bats c) bacteria d) flies
- 4 Don't put honey on your cut
a) eye b) head c) stomach d) knee

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 Mohammed Salah is a very footballer.
a) bored b) famous c) poisonous d) unkind
- 2 Ancient Egyptians slept on reed
a) mat b) oven c) pot d) gate
- 3 A / An triangle has two sides of equal length.
a) equilateral b) right angle c) scalene d) isosceles
- 4 Baby kangaroos can sit inside their mom's
a) eyes b) ears c) legs d) pouch

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

beach - swim - peach - sea - amazing

Alexandria is a big city. It's on the 1) There's a lot of 2) things to do in Alexandria. My favorite place is the 3) It's great to go there and 4)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Every morning, he wakes up early and puts on his galabeya and leather shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats bread and fruits for breakfast. Farouk is lucky because he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile. He uses the fresh water for his crops. Last week, Farouk put his crops into big baskets made from reeds and went to the market to sell his crops.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Farouk is a
a) vet b) farmer c) teacher d) doctor
- 2 Farouk puts on his and leather shoes.
a) jacket b) hat c) galabeya d) pants

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Where does Farouk live?
- 4 What does Farouk eat for breakfast?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- 1 living - here - Do - you - like - ?
- 2 India - in - is - Bangalore - a city - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 Hana (visit) her grandma last week.
- 2 I don't (has) a headache.

7 Punctuate the following.

- what is the matter, Ashraf

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding words:

Staying healthy

(healthy food - balanced diet - exercise - enough sleep - sport)

Exam (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 Mr Sami's family went to the
a) park b) museum c) factory d) zoo
- 2 They went to the zoo
a) yesterday b) today c) now d) last Friday
- 3 The kids were to the animals.
a) bad b) unhelpful c) kind d) unkind
- 4 Sagda loved the the most.
a) lion b) penguin c) kangaroo d) elephant

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 It's a wonderful view from my
a) oven b) elevator c) balcony d) closet
- 2 His phone is very It costs a lot of money.
a) cheap b) expensive c) poisonous d) boring
- 3 We get water from the River Nile.
a) rain b) hot c) fresh d) salt
- 4 He's very because he missed the bus.
a) unlucky b) happy c) bored d) unsafe

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

work - animals - path - traveled - friendly

My uncle is a scientist. He loves 1) When he was younger, he 2) a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very 3) and helped him with his 4)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

A young man was driving his new car when a child hit a stone into the car's side door. He stopped and drove back to where it came from. The angry driver jumped out of the car and hit the child hard. He pushed him against the car and shouted at him. He said that his car is so expensive and the stone would cost him two thousand pounds to fix it. The child said he was sorry. But he didn't know what to do. He did that because no one else would stop to help him. His brother lost his leg in a car accident.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The underlined word "it" refers to the
 a) car b) leg c) money d) stone
- 2 His brother lost his in a car accident.
 a) arm b) leg c) nose d) eye

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Why did the driver hit the child hard?.....
- 4 How much would that stone cost the young man?.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- 1 little - a - is - wind - breeze - A - .
- 2 would - you - city - to - like - What - visit - ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 His dad (go) to Luxor last year.
- 2 My birthday is (on) February.

7 Punctuate the following.

- 1 which food is the most popular in Egypt

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding words:

Alexandria

(beaches - Alexandria)

Exam (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1) Soha moved to the new..... last month.
a) house b) village c) town d) apartment
- 2) The new..... is bigger.
a) bedroom b) kitchen c) bathroom d) balcony
- 3) The oven is more.....
a) modern b) old c) smaller d) awful
- 4) She likes to watch movies in the.....
a) bathroom b) kitchen c) living room d) balcony

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1) "....." is to write about something in an online blog.
a) Posting b) Emailing c) Blogging d) Chatting
- 2) His cat died last week. He was very.....
a) lucky b) friendly c) happy d) unhappy
- 3) Our town has a shopping.....
a) mail b) mall c) male d) meal
- 4) In a..... you can have fun and go on different rides.
a) suitcase b) theme park c) passport d) camera

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

around - animals - groups - bus - plants

Last week, we went on a school trip to the zoo. We got on our school 1)..... . When we got to the zoo, we got into 2)..... . We walked all 3)..... the zoo. There were so many 4)..... .

**4 Read the following text and answer the questions.**

It's Monday and Ahmed is at home. He can't go to school because he has a cold. He must stay in bed. He has a cough and a sore throat so he can't talk. The doctor says he must not run or play. He must sleep and drink a lot of water. All his family are worried about him. They hope he will get better soon.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Today is
a) Monday b) Sunday c) Tuesday d) Friday
- 2 Ahmed has a
a) cold b) earache c) headache d) toothache

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Why can't Ahmed talk?
- 4 What must Ahmed do to get better?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- 1 throat - you - Did - have - a - sore - ?
- 2 my - an email - I - received - from - friend - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 Did you (visited) your grandma last month?
- 2 That movie is very (bored).

7 Punctuate the following.

- 1 do you like living here

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding words:

How to stay healthy

(vegetables - protein)

Exam (9)

لنص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 Hassan shared the with his brother Yasser.
a) balcony b) bedroom c) bathroom d) kitchen
- 2 Yasser is Hassan's
a) father b) uncle c) brother d) friend
- 3 In the middle of the room, there is a big
a) armchair b) closet c) sofa d) table
- 4 On the wall, there are lots of posters of
a) colors b) singers c) actors d) animals

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 I fly at night and sleep upside down on trees. I am a
a) dolphin b) bat c) horse d) kangaroo
- 2 A breeze is a little
a) wind b) lake c) sea d) water
- 3 You can make sandcastles on the
a) beach b) hotel c) museum d) zoo
- 4 This armchair is I can't sit on it.
a) unhappy b) unlucky c) uncomfortable d) unfriendly

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

friendly - night - quiet - adventure - shops

I'm having a lovely time here. It's peaceful and very 1)
especially at 2) There are a few 3) and
houses. There is only one restaurant, but it's great. Everyone
who lives here is really 4)

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

Bees make honey. We can eat honey for breakfast. We sometimes put it on basbousa. Honey is not only a kind of food. It's also used as a treatment for many injuries and illnesses. In some countries doctors use honey to treat wounds. That's because honey contain things that can kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. Doctors say that honey is safe to use as a treatment. Some people mix honey with milk to treat cough.

A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) We get honey from
 a) banks b) ants c) trees d) bees
- 2) Honey can be used as food and
 a) treatment b) illness c) game d) work

B) Answer the following questions

- 1) Why is honey used as treatment?
- 2) How do some people treat cough?

5) Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- 1) had - a wonderful - yesterday - out - I - day - .
- 2) good - health - for - your - Exercise - is - .

6) Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1) (Do) he have an earache?
- 2) My grandma was born (on) 1971.

7) Punctuate the following.

- 1) alexandria is a beautiful city

8) Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding elements: (Your favorite animal)

(What is the animal? - Why do you like it?)

Exam (10)

مراجعة سريعة

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 Hana's family moved to a new
a) house b) apartment c) block d) park
- 2 The new apartment is in
a) London b) Cairo c) Alexandria d) Giza
- 3 It's near the
a) pyramids b) school c) park d) restaurant
- 4 Hana shares her room with her younger
a) friend b) brother c) sister d) cousin

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The is on the top of the house.
a) living room b) roof c) kitchen d) cushion
- 2 She's very She never tries to make friends.
a) uncomfortable b) unsafe c) unlucky d) unfriendly
- 3 When your head hurts, you have a
a) cough b) earache c) backache d) headache
- 4 I always go to the to read books.
a) hospital b) bank c) library d) market

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

parrots - restaurant - park - family - elephants

Ramez went to a wildlife 1) yesterday. He went with his 2) They saw many animals like lions, 3) and kangaroos. His favorite birds are the 4)

**4 Read the following text and answer the questions.**

I'm Ali. I live in Alexandria with my parents and my brother, Hany. We live in a big apartment. There are two bedrooms in our apartment. I share a room with my brother. We have a big kitchen. We have two bathrooms. There are two beds in my room. In the middle of the room, you can see a big closet for our clothes. I like my bedroom. I like the view of the park from our balcony.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The main idea of the text is about a big ".....".
 a) apartment b) work c) family d) farm
- 2 Ali keeps his clothes in a big
 a) mat b) roof c) sofa d) closet

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Does Ali like his apartment?
- 4 Who does Ali share a room with?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1 went - the - to - museum - They - yesterday - .

2 I - get - do - How - the - to - park - ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1 He didn't (traveled) to South America.

2 Do you (has) a headache?

7 Punctuate the following.

1 my grandma was born in 1960

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding words:

Your favorite subject

(English - My teacher)

Exam (11)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1 Omar is an excellent.....
a) father b) teacher c) engineer d) student
- 2 He likes to..... his friends.
a) help b) fight c) hit d) share
- 3 He likes to read books in the.....
a) restaurant b) beach c) library d) home
- 4 His..... love him.
a) friends b) teachers c) neighbors d) kids

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 Don't go down the street in the dark alone. It's.....
a) unhappy b) unlucky c) unsafe d) unfriendly
- 2 I can't talk. I have a sore.....
a) throat b) leg c) eye d) head
- 3 There are two bedrooms in our new.....
a) village b) school c) apartment d) kitchen
- 4 When someone is....., they don't thank others for doing something good.
a) useless b) unkind c) ungrateful d) unhappy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

papyrus - paper - bricks - walls - mud

In Ancient Egypt, homes were different. People built the houses from 1)..... made of 2)..... from the Nile. The mud bricks made the 3)..... strong. People use 4)..... to cover doors and windows.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups. My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family deep in the jungle. Suddenly, there was a lot of rain and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was a villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!"

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 My uncle is a
 a) carpenter b) scientist c) nurse d) farmer
- 2 "Do research" means to get more
 a) information b) shout c) food d) air

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Why did your uncle travel a lot in South America?
- 4 Why did your uncle go deep in the jungle?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- 1 live - the shells - in - Snails - can - .
- 2 had - earache - I - couldn't - and - an - I - hear - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 They (~~don't~~) play basketball yesterday.
- 2 The history is very (interested).

7 Punctuate the following.

- 1 we went to a museum last week

8 Write a paragraph of about (30) words.

Guiding words:

Alexandria Library

don't eat - quiet - mobile phone - visit)

Exam (12)

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

نوع الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1 Huda's new apartment is than her old one.
a) smaller b) bigger c) thinner
- 2 Huda lived in her old apartment about years.
a) 11 b) 12 c) 13
- 3 She is now.
a) sad b) sick c) happy

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the following words.

medicine - doctor - the matter - cold

Doctor : What is 1)....., Adel?

Adel : I don't feel well. I have a 2).....

Doctor : Ok. Stay home, sleep well and take this 3).....

Adel : Thank you, 4).....

3 Read the following passage and then answer the questions.

I'm Abeer. I'm in primary five. My brother is in primary four. My father is a doctor and my mother is a housewife. I like to read about animals. The kangaroo jumps on two legs. I like the parrot. It's very beautiful and colorful. The lion is a very big cat. It is very strong. Last week, we went to the wildlife park. Our father took us by his car. We saw a lot of different animals. We were very happy.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 They went to the wildlife park days ago.
a) five b) seven c) nine
- 2 The jumps on two legs.
a) lion b) parrot c) kangaroo
- 3 Abeer is than her brother.
a) older b) younger c) youngest



B) Answer the following questions.

1) What does the underlined pronoun "it" prefer to?

2) How did they go to the wildlife park?

4) Choose the correct answer.

1) I spent my in Alexandria last month.

- a) vacation b) lunch c) diary

2) We our heavy cases to the car yesterday.

- a) carry b) carried c) carries

3) Fares a headache.

- a) has b) have c) does

4) When something is, we can't use it.

- a) useful b) good c) useless

5) the door please, Ahmed.

- a) Open b) Opened c) Opening

5) Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1) you - an - earache - Do - have - ?

2) lot of - made - A - their - near - homes - the Nile - people - .

3) went - the - park - to - I - wildlife - .

4) slept - the - I - all - way - home - back - .

5) I - do - get to - How - the - stop - bus - ?



Listening Texts

Unit (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I like my bedroom. I share it with my brother. On the right, there is my bed with a table next to it. On the left there is my brother's bed. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm Heba. I'm in primary five. I get up at seven o'clock. It's time for breakfast. My mother cooks breakfast. I have eggs and beans. I drink milk. I have breakfast with my family. Then, I go to school by bus. I like my school very much.

Unit (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

In a hospital in Bangalore, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members. In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

My name is Mona and this is my school. It's got twenty classrooms and two laboratories. We have a big library at the corridor, next to the computer room.

Unit (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Yesterday, Toka went to a wildlife park with her family. They saw lots of different animals like lions, kangaroos, and penguins. She saw her favorite birds, the parrots.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

My name is Hanin. I went to Hurghada. I went by bus. I swam and played chess. I was happy.

Unit (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Egypt is my country. It is in Africa. Cairo is the biggest city in Egypt. The River Nile is in Egypt. It is the longest river in the world. Tourists like visiting Egypt in the winter. They go to the Pyramids and the museums. They can go on a boat trip on the river.

Unit (11)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

On Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm in October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with history. I always go to the museum at home. The bus ride wasn't bad. It only took an hour to reach our destination.



Listening Texts

Exams

Exam (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I had a lovely day in Alexandria. I traveled with my mom to see my aunt. When we arrived, we rushed straight to my aunt's house. She gave us a delicious lunch.

Exam (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Omar lives in a big house. He lives with his parents and his sister Hana. Omar's bedroom is white and blue. In the middle of the room, there's a big closet.

Exam (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

To stay healthy we should exercise every day. We need to sleep for eight or nine hours at night. We should spend time with our friends. We should have a balanced diet.

Exam (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Rahma is twelve years old. She loves her bedroom as she can do her homework and relax. She spends most of time in the bedroom.

Exam (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Ahmed went to Alexandria with his family. They stayed in a hotel. He stayed in a room with his dad. They had lunch at the hotel.

Exam (6)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I like having honey for breakfast. It's the sweetest substance on earth. Some types of honey can kill bacteria. But

don't put honey on your cut knee.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Mr Sami's family went to the zoo yesterday. The kids were kind to the animals. Sagda loved the elephant the most.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Soha moved to the new apartment last month. The new kitchen is bigger and the oven is more modern. She likes to watch movies in the living room.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hassan shared the bedroom with his brother Yasser. In the middle of the room, there is a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hana's family moved to a new apartment in Giza. It's near the pyramids. Hana shares her room with her younger sister.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Omar is an excellent student. He likes to help his friends. He likes to read books in the library. His teachers love him.

Exam (12) خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Huda's new apartment is bigger than her old one. She lived in her old apartment about 12 years. She is happy now.